ŠKODA

OWNER´S MANUAL



ŠKODA Yeti

Documentation of vehicle delivery

Affix the vehicle data sticker here

Date of vehicle delivery[a)]

☐☐ / ☐☐ / ☐☐☐☐

ŠKODA Partner
Stamp and signature of the vendor

I confirm that I have taken delivery of the specified vehicle in good condition, have received information on how to operate it correctly, and have had the terms of the warranty explained to me.

Signature of the customer

Does the vehicle have an extended warranty? Yes ☐ No ☐

Limitations of the ŠKODA extended warranty[a)]

Years: _____ or km: _____
or.
miles: _____

[a)] Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

5L0012720AL

1. vehicle owner

This vehicle with the official registration number
(filled in by the vendor)
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Phone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service advisor:

Phone:

2. Vehicle Operator

This vehicle with the official registration number
belongs to:

Title, Name / Company:

Address:

Phone:

ŠKODA Partner

Service advisor:

Phone:

5L0012720AL

Preface

You have opted for a ŠKODA – our sincere thanks for your confidence in us.

This Owner's Manual contains instructions about the vehicle operation, important information about safety, vehicle care, maintenance and self-help and technical vehicle data.

For vehicles with Infotainment, the operation of some of the functions and vehicle systems is carried out via Infotainment.

Please do not read just this Owner's Manual, but also read the Infotainment Owner's Manual carefully. The procedure in accordance with the two instructions is a prerequisite for the correct use of the vehicle.

When using the vehicle, the general binding country-specific legal requirements (e.g. transporting children, deactivating the airbag, tyre use, road traffic, etc.) must always be observed.

Please always pay attention when driving! As the driver, you are fully responsible for road safety.

We hope you enjoy driving your ŠKODA, and wish you a pleasant journey at all times.

Your ŠKODA AUTO

Table of Contents

materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars 5

On-board literature 7

Notes 8

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information 9

Abbreviations

Safety

Passive Safety 11
- General information 11
- Correct and safe seated position 11

Seat belts 14
- Using seat belts 14
- Inertia reels and belt tensioners 16

Airbag system 17
- Description of the airbag system 17
- Airbag deactivation 20

Transporting children safely 22
- Child seat 22
- Fastening systems 25

Using the system

Cockpit 29
- Overview 28

Instruments and Indicator Lights 30
- Instrument cluster 30
- Warning lights 33

Information system 40
- Driver information system 40
- Operation of the information system 42
- Multifunction display (MFD) 43
- MAXI DOT display 44
- Service interval display 46
- SmartGate 47

Unlocking and opening 49
- Unlocking and locking 49
- Anti-theft alarm system 53
- Luggage compartment lid 54
- Window operation 55
- Panorama sliding/tilting roof 58

Lights and visibility 60
- Lights 60
- Interior lighting 64
- Visibility 65
- Windscreen wipers and washers 66
- Rear view mirror 68

Seats and head restraints 70
- Front seats 70
- Rear seats 73
- Headrests 75
- Front seat heating 76

Useful features 77
- Interior fittings 77
- Tablet holder 86

Transport of cargo 87
- Luggage Storage and Transport 87
- Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate) 93
- Transportation on the roof rack 94

Heating and ventilation 95
- Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic 95
- Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 98

Driving

Starting-off and Driving 102
- Starting and stopping the engine 102
- START-STOPsystem 104
- Brakes and parking 105
- Manual gear changing and pedals 107
- Automatic transmission 108
- Running in and economical driving 110
- Avoiding damage to your vehicle 111

Assist systems 112
- General information 112
- Braking and stabilisation systems 112
- OFF ROAD Mode 114
- Parking aid (ParkPilot) 116
- Reversing camera 118
- Park Assist 120
- Cruise Control System 123
- Fatigue detection 124
- Tyre pressure monitoring 125

Towing device and trailer 126
- Hitch 126
- Using the towing device 130

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance 133
- Service work, adjustments and technical alterations 133
- Service intervals 135
- Cleaning and care 137

Inspecting and replenishing 141
- Fuel 141
- AdBlue® And its refilling 143
- Engine compartment 144
- Engine oil 146
- Coolant 148

Brake fluid 149
Vehicle battery 149

Wheels 152
Wheels and tyres 152
Operating in winter conditions 154

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help 156
Emergency equipment 156
Changing a wheel 157
Breakdown kit 161
Jump-starting 163
Towing the vehicle 164
Remote control and removable light - replacing the battery/batteries 166
Emergency unlocking / unlocking of doors 167
Replacing windscreen wiper blades 168

Fuses and light bulbs 169
Fuses 169
Bulbs 172

Technical data

Technical data 177
Basic vehicle data 177
Vehicle-specific data depending on the engine 183

Index

materials defect liability and ŠKODA warranty for new cars

Materials defect liability
Your ŠKODA Partner, as a vendor, is liable to you for material damage to your new ŠKODA car, ŠKODA Genuine Parts or ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in accordance with statutory regulations and the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA warranty for new cars
As well as the materials defect liability, ŠKODA AUTO grants you the ŠKODA warranty for new cars (hereinafter referred to as "ŠKODA warranty)," according to the conditions described below.

As part of the ŠKODA warranty, ŠKODA AUTO will provide the following services.

- Free repair of faulty components or vehicle defects that occur within two years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of paintwork defects on your vehicle that occur within three years from the start of the ŠKODA warranty.
- Free repair of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork of your vehicle that occurs within twelve years from the start of the warranty. Only corrosion of body panels from the inside to the outside is included in the definition of corrosion caused by rust on the bodywork and covered by the ŠKODA warranty.

The start of warranty is the date on which the new car is handed over to the initial purchaser by the ŠKODA Partner[1]. This date must be noted down by the ŠKODA Partner in the Owner's Manual for your vehicle » *in the section on the documentation of the vehicle handover*.

Vehicle repairs may be carried out either by replacing the faulty part or by repairing it. Replaced parts become the property of the ŠKODA Service Partner.

There shall be no further claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty. In particular, there shall be no claims for replacement, cancellation, provision of a courtesy vehicle for the duration of repairs or compensation for damages.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner in a country of the European Economic Area (i.e. the countries of the European Union, Norway, Iceland and Liechtenstein) or in Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner in one of these countries.

If your ŠKODA vehicle was purchased from a ŠKODA Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland, claims arising from the ŠKODA warranty must also be made through a ŠKODA Service Partner outside the European Economic Area and Switzerland.

A prerequisite for carrying out work under the ŠKODA warranty is that all service work has been carried out in a timely and technically correct manner and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions. It must be proven that service work has been carried out properly and in accordance with the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions when making a claim on the ŠKODA warranty. In the event of a missed service or failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions, you may still be entitled to warranty claims as long as you can prove that the missed service or the failure to carry out a service according to the ŠKODA AUTO's provisions was not the cause of the defect.

Natural wear and tear to your vehicle is not covered by the ŠKODA warranty. The ŠKODA warranty also does not cover faults to bodywork, installations or conversions provided by third parties, or vehicle faults caused as a result. The same applies to accessories that were not installed and/or delivered ex-factory.

In addition, this warranty does not apply if the defect was caused by one of the following.

- Unauthorised use, improper handling (e.g. use in racing competitions or overloading), improper care and maintenance or unauthorised modifications to your vehicle.
- Non-compliance with instructions in the Owner's Manual or other factory-supplied instructions.
- External causes or influences (e.g. accidents, hail, flooding etc.).

[1] Due to the requirements of the generally binding country-specific regulations, the date of first registration can be given instead of the date of the vehicle handover.

- Parts fitted on or in the vehicle, whose use has not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, or modification of the vehicle in a manner not approved by ŠKODA AUTO (e.g. tuning).
- Damage caused by you that was not immediately seen to by a specialist garage or was not rectified properly.

It is the customer's responsibility to prove that s/he is not the cause of the damage.

This ŠKODA warranty does not affect the purchaser's statutory rights from materials defect liability from the vehicle vendor and other potential claims from product liability laws.

Mobility warranty
The mobility warranty provides a sense of security when travelling in your vehicle.

If your vehicle stops on the road due to an unexpected failure, services for keeping you moving are provided under the mobility guarantee, which include the following services: Breakdown at the roadside and towing to ŠKODA Service partners, technical assistance on the phone or on-site commissioning.

If your vehicle is not repaired on the same day, the ŠKODA Service Partner may provide further services as required, such as replacement transportation (bus, train etc.) or a courtesy vehicle etc.

More information regarding terms and conditions for the provision of a mobility warranty for your vehicle can be obtained from your ŠKODA Partner. They will also provide you with detailed terms and conditions for the mobility warranty with respect to your vehicle. In the event that there is no mobility warranty coverage in place for your vehicle, you should check with any ŠKODA Service Partner about the possibility of a supplementary agreement.

Optional ŠKODA Extended warranty
If you opted for a ŠKODA extended warranty when purchasing your new car, the two-year ŠKODA warranty is extended by the period you chose or until the chosen mileage limit has been reached, whichever occurs first.

The paint warranty and the warranty against corrosion described above are unaffected by the ŠKODA extended warranty.

The ŠKODA extended warranty does not apply to external and internal foils.

The information on the detailed conditions of the ŠKODA extended warranty is provided by your ŠKODA partner.

Note
The ŠKODA extended warranty is only available in some countries.

On-board literature

You will always find this **Owner's Manual** in the on-board literature. Depending on equipment fitted, the on-board literature can also contain the **Infotainment Owner's Manual** or **The radio Owner's Manual**.

Owner´s Manual
These Owner´s Manual apply to all **body variants** of the vehicle and all related **model versions** as well as all **equipment levels**.

This Owner's Manual describes **all possible equipment variants** without identifying them as special equipment, model variants or market-dependent equipment. Consequently, this vehicle **does not contain all of the equipment components** described in this Owner's Manual.

The range of equipment installed in your vehicle depends on the purchase contract for the vehicle. For any questions regarding the scope of equipment, please contact a ŠKODA Partner.

The **Pictures** in this Owner's Manual are for illustrative purposes only. The illustrations can differ in minor details from your vehicle; they are only intended to provide general information.

ŠKODA AUTO pursues a policy of ongoing product and model development with all vehicles. Changes in terms of supply scope are possible at any time with regard to design, equipment and technology. The information listed in this Owner's Manual corresponds to the information available at the time of going to press.

Therefore legal claims cannot be made based on the technical data, illustrations and information contained in this Owner's Manual.

We recommend that **web pages** that are referred to in this Owner's Manual are displayed using the classic view. Not all necessary information may be displayed correctly if the mobile view is chosen.

Infotainment Owner´s Manual
The Infotainment Owner's Manual contains a description of the Infotainment service and possibly also some functions and vehicle systems.

The radio Owner's Manual
The radio Owner's Manual describes the operation of the radio, and in some cases various functions and vehicle systems.

Online user manuals



Fig. 1

Read in the QR code » Fig. 1 using the respective application on your external device (e.g. phone, tablet) **or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with a model overview of the ŠKODA brand.

http://go.skoda.eu/owners-manuals

- Select the desired model - a menu for the user manuals is displayed.
- Select the construction period as well as the language.
- Select the desired manual - it can be displayed either online or in pdf format.

Notes

Terms used

"Specialist" - Workshop - a workshop that carries out specialist service tasks for ŠKODA vehicles. A specialist can be a ŠKODA Partner, a ŠKODA Service Partner, or an independent workshop.

"ŠKODA Service Partner" - A workshop that has been contractually authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to service ŠKODA vehicles and to sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

"ŠKODA Partner" - A company that has been authorised by ŠKODA AUTO or its sales partner to sell new ŠKODA vehicles and, when applicable, to service them using ŠKODA Genuine Parts and sell ŠKODA Genuine Parts.

Text notes

"Press" - Short press (e.g. a button) within 1 s

"Hold" - Long press (e.g. a button) for more than 1 s

Explanation of symbols

- Reference to the introductory module of a chapter with important information and safety warnings
- Situations in which the vehicle must be stopped as soon as possible
- ® Trademark
- Telephone operation in the MAXI DOT display
- Text display in the segment display
- → Marker to the next operation step

WARNING

Texts with this symbol draw attention to threats of a **serious accident, injury or loss of life**.

CAUTION

Texts with this symbol draw attention to the risk of vehicle damage or possible inoperability of some systems.

Note

Texts with this symbol contain additional information.

Structure of the Owner's Manual and further information

Structure of the Owner's Manual
The Owner's Manual is hierarchically divided into the following areas.

- **Section** (e.g. Operating instructions) - the title of the section is shown down in the left-hand corner
  - **Main chapter** (e.g. Checking and refilling) - the title of the main chapter is shown down in the right-hand corner
    - **Chapter** (e.g. Engine oil)
      - 🕮 **Introductory information** - Module overview within the chapter, introductory information about the chapter content and, where appropriate, information relevant to the whole chapter
      - **Module** (e.g. Checking and refilling)

Information search
When searching for information in the Owner´s Manual, we recommend using the **Index** at the end of the Owner's Manual.

Direction indications
All direction indications such as "left", "right", "front", "rear" relate to the forward direction of travel of the vehicle.

Units
The volume, weight, speed and length data are given in metric units, unless otherwise indicated.

Display
In this Owner's Manual, the MAXI DOT display is used as the display in the instrument cluster unless otherwise stated.

Help in an emergency
In case of breakdown, the breakdown service contact information required can be found in the following places.

- ▸ Contact details for the ŠKODA Partner (e.g. window sticker)
- ▸ Infotainment (Phone - breakdown service / information service menu)
- ▸ ŠKODA mobile application
- ▸ ŠKODA web pages

Abbreviations

Abbreviation	Definition
rpm	Engine revolutions per minute
ABS	Anti-lock brake system
AF	Multi-purpose vehicles
AFS	Adaptive headlights
AG	Automatic gearbox
AGM	Vehicle battery type
TCS	Traction control
CO_2	Carbon dioxide
COC	Declaration of conformity
DPF	Diesel particle filter
DSG	Automatic double clutch gearbox
DSR	Active driver-steering recommendation
EDL	Electronic differential lock
ECE	Economic Commission for Europe
EPC	EPC fault light
ESC	Electronic Stability Control
RD	Rim depth
EU	European Union
HBA	Hydraulic brake assist
HHC	Uphill start assist
KESSY	keyless unlocking, starting and locking
kW	Kilowatt, measuring unit for output
LED	Lighting element type
MFD	Multifunction display
MG	Manual gearbox
MPI	Gasoline engine with a multi-point fuel injection
MSR	Engine drag torque control
N1	Panel van intended exclusively or mainly for the transportation of goods
NiMH	Nickel metal hydride

Abbreviation	Definition
Nm	Newton meter, measuring unit for the engine torque
PIN	personal identification number
SCR	Diesel engine for which the AdBlue ® solution is required
TDI CR	Diesel engine with turbo-charging and common rail injection system
TSA	Trailer stabilisation
TSI	Petrol engine with turbo charging and direct injection
VIN	Vehicle identification number
W	Watt, unit of power
Wi-Fi	wireless data network

Safety

Passive Safety

General information

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Before setting off 11
Driving safety 11

In this section of the instructions you will find important information on the subject of passive safety. We have combined everything here which you should be familiar with, for example, regarding seat belts, airbags, safety of children and anything similar.

Other important safety information can also be found in the subsequent sections of this Owner's Manual. The Owner's Manual should therefore always be kept in the vehicle.

Before setting off

For your own safety and the safety of the people travelling with you, please pay attention to the following points before setting off.

- Check the lights and turn signal lights are functioning correctly.
- Check the wiper function and the wiper blades for wear. Check the windscreen washer fluid level.
- Ensure that all of the windows offer good visibility to the outside.
- Adjust the rear-view mirror so that vision to the rear is guaranteed. Ensure that the mirrors are not covered.
- Check the tyre inflation pressure.
- Check the engine oil, brake fluid and coolant level.
- Secure all items of luggage.
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle.
- Close all doors as well as the bonnet and boot lid.
- Ensure that no objects can obstruct the pedals.
- Protect children using a suitable child seat » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.
- Adopt the correct seated position. Tell your passengers to assume the correct seated position » page 11, *Correct and safe seated position*.

Driving safety

For safety in traffic, the following precautions must be observed.

- Do not become distracted from concentrating on the traffic situation, (e.g. by your passengers or mobile phone calls).
- Never drive when your driving ability is impaired, (e.g. due to medication, alcohol, drugs or similar).
- Keep to the traffic regulations and the permissible speed limit.
- Always adjust the driving speed to the road, traffic and weather conditions.
- Take regular breaks on long journeys (at least every two hours).

Correct and safe seated position

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

The correct seating position for the driver 12
Adjusting the steering wheel position 12
Correct seating position for the front passenger 13
Correct seating position for the passengers in the rear seats 13

Always assume the correct seated position before setting off and do not change this position while driving. Also advise your passengers to adopt the correct seated position and not to change this position while the car is moving.

The following list contains instructions for the **Passenger** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not lean against the dash panel.
- Do not put your feet on the dash panel.

The following list contains instructions for all **Passengers** which, if not observed, may cause serious injuries or death.

- Do not sit only on the front part of the seat.
- Do not sit facing to one side.
- Do not lean out of the window.
- Do not put your limbs out of the window.
- Do not put your feet on the seat cushion.

WARNING

▪ The front seats and all head restraints must be adjusted to match the body size at all times and the seat belt must always be fastened properly to provide the most effective levels of protection to the passengers.
▪ Each occupant must correctly fasten the seat belt belonging to the seat. Children must be fastened » page 22, *Transporting children safely* with a suitable restraint system.
▪ The seat backrests must not be tilted too far back when driving, as this will impair the function of the seat belts and of the airbag system – risk of injury!

WARNING

By sitting incorrectly, the occupant is risking life-threatening injuries.

The correct seating position for the driver

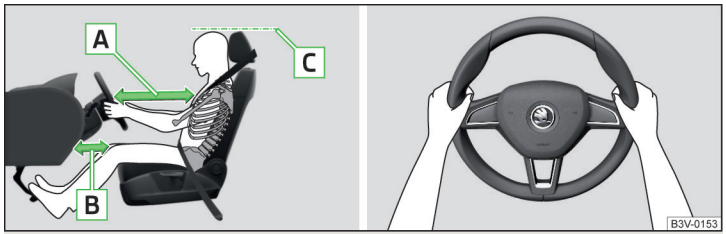


Fig. 2 **Correct seated position for the driver/correct steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For your own safety and to reduce the risk of injury in the event of an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the driver's seat in the forward/back direction so that the pedals can be fully depressed with slightly bent legs.
✓ For vehicles equipped with driver knee airbags, adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 2 - B.
✓ Adjust the seat backrest so that the highest point of the steering wheel can be reached with your arms at a slight angle.
✓ Adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the steering wheel and your chest is at least 25 cm » Fig. 2 - A.
✓ Adjust the headrest so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of your head (not for seats with integrated headrests) » Fig. 2 - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14, *Using seat belts*.

WARNING

▪ Maintain a distance of at least 25 cm from the steering wheel, and a distance of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dash panel at the height of the knee airbag. Not maintaining this minimum distance will mean that the airbag system will not be able to properly protect you - hazard!
▪ When driving, hold the steering wheel with both hands firmly on the outer edge in the "9 o'clock" and "3 o'clock" position » Fig. 2. Never hold the steering wheel in the "12 o'clock" position or in any other way (e.g. in the middle, inner edge of the steering wheel or similar). Otherwise, you could sustain serious injuries to the arms, hands and head if the airbag is activated.
▪ Ensure there are no objects in the driver's footwell as they may get behind the pedals while driving. You would then no longer be able to operate the clutch, brake or acceleration pedals.

Adjusting the steering wheel position



Fig. 3 **Adjusting the steering wheel position**

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

The height and forward/back position of the steering wheel can be adjusted.

› Swing the safety lever under the steering wheel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 3.

› Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position. The steering wheel can be adjusted in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull the holder in arrow direction 3 until the stop.

WARNING

▪ Never adjust the steering wheel when the vehicle is moving only when the vehicle is stationary!
▪ The safety lever must always be locked so that the steering wheel cannot accidentally change position – There is a risk of an accident!

Correct seating position for the front passenger

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For passenger safety and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Position the front passenger seat back as far as possible. The front passenger must maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the dash panel so that the airbag offers the greatest possible safety if it is deployed.
✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 12* - C (not for seats with integrated headrests).
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14.

WARNING

▪ A distance of least 25 cm to the dashboard should be maintained, otherwise the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life!
▪ Always keep your feet in the footwell when the car is being driven – never place your feet on the instrument panel, out of the window or on the surface of the seats! You will be exposed to increased risk of injury if it becomes necessary to apply the brake or in the event of an accident. If an airbag is deployed, you could suffer fatal injuries by adopting an incorrect seated position!

Correct seating position for the passengers in the rear seats

Read and observe ! on page 12 first.

For the safety of the passengers in the rear seats, and to reduce the risk of injury in an accident, the following instructions must be observed.

✓ Adjust the headrests so that the top edge of the headrest is at the same level as the upper part of the head » Fig. 2 *on page 12* - C.
✓ Correctly fasten the seat belt » page 14, *Using seat belts*.

Seat belts

Using seat belts

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Correct routing of seat belt 15
Fastening and unfastening seat belts 15
Seat belt for the rear middle seat 16

Seat belts that are fastened correctly offer good protection in the event of an accident. They reduce the risk of an injury and increase the chance of survival in the event of a major accident.

The seat belts reduce the kinetic energy (energy of motion) to a considerable extent. They also prevent uncontrolled movements which, in turn, may well result in severe injuries.

When transporting a child the following instructions must be observed » page 22, *Transporting children safely*.

WARNING

- Fasten seat belts before every ride! This also applies to other passengers - there is a danger of injury!
- Maximum seat belt protection is only achieved if you are correctly seated » page 11, *Correct and safe seated position*.
- The seat backrests of the front seats must not be tilted too far to the rear otherwise the seatbelts can lose their effectiveness.

WARNING

Information on dealing with the safety belts

- The belt webbing must not be jammed in-between at any point or twisted, or chafe against any sharp edges.
- Make sure you do not catch the seat belt in the door when closing it.

WARNING

Information on the proper use of safety belts

- Adjust the height of the belt in such a way that the shoulder part of the belt is roughly positioned across the middle of your shoulder - on no account across your neck.
- No two persons (also not children) should ever use a single seat belt together.
- The lock tongue should only be inserted into the lock which is the correct one for your seat. Wrong use of the safety belt will reduce its capacity to protect and the risk of injury increases.
- Many layers of clothing and loose clothing (e. g. a winter coat over a jacket) do not allow you to be correctly seated and impairs proper operation of the seat belts.
- Do not use clamps or other objects to adjust seat belts (e.g. for shortening the belts for smaller persons).
- The seat belts for the rear seats can only fulfil their function reliably when the seat backrests are correctly locked into position » page 74.

WARNING

Information on the care and maintenance of safety belts

- The belt webbing must always be kept clean. Soiled belt webbing may impair proper operation of the inertia reel » page 140.
- The seat belts must not be removed or changed in any way. Do not attempt to repair the seat belts yourself.
- Check the condition of all the seat belts on a regular basis. If damage to the parts of the seat belt system (e.g. the strap, the belt connectors, the retractor, the lock or similar) are detected, the seat belt in question must be replaced immediately by a specialist.
- Seat belts which have been subjected to stress in an accident should be replaced by a specialist garage. The anchorage points for the belts should also be checked.

Correct routing of seat belt

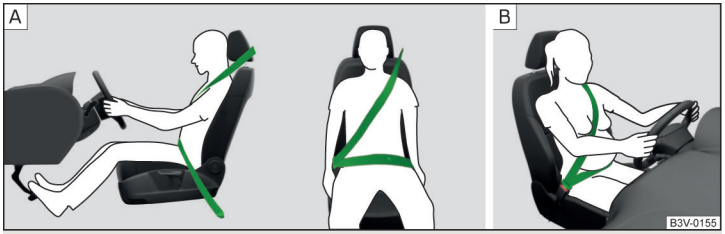


Fig. 4 **Routing of belt webbing over the shoulders and the lap belt/Routing of belt webbing for an expectant mother**

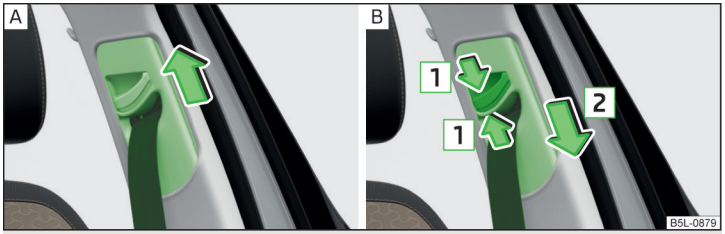


Fig. 5 **Seat belt height adjusters for front seats**

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

It is important that the belt is properly routed to ensure seat belts offer the maximum protection.

The **shoulder belt** should be positioned approximately over the middle of your shoulder (on no account across your neck) and lie flush to the chest » Fig. 4 - A.

The **lower part of the belt** should run across the pelvis (it should not lie on top of the stomach) and must always fit snugly » Fig. 4 - A.

For **pregnant women**, the lower part of the belt must be positioned as low down as possible across the pelvis, to avoid exerting any pressure on the lower abdomen » Fig. 4 - B.

Seat belt height adjusters for front seats

› Push the return pulley **upwards** in the direction of arrow » Fig. 5 - A.
› **Or**: push together the mechanism in the direction of arrows 1 and push the return pulley **downwards** in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 5 - B.
› Then pull firmly on the belt to ensure that the seat belt height adjuster has correctly locked in place.

! WARNING

- Always ensure that the webbing of the seat belts is properly routed. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- A seat belt which is hanging too loose can result in injuries as your body is moved forward by the kinetic energy produced in an accident and is then suddenly held firm by the belt.
- The belt webbing must not run across solid or fragile objects (e.g. pencils, spectacles, pens, keys etc.). Such objects can cause injury.

Fastening and unfastening seat belts

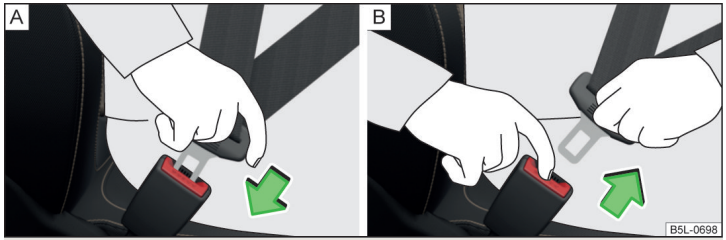


Fig. 6 **Fastening/unfastening the seat belt**

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

Before fastening the belt

› Adjust the headrest properly (does not apply to seats with integrated headrests).
› Adjust the seat (applies to the front seats).
› Adjust the belt height (applies to the front seats).

Fasten

› Use the lock tongue to slowly pull the webbing over your chest and pelvis.

› Insert the lock tongue into the belt buckle » Fig. 6 – A that is part of the seat until it clicks into place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

Release
› Grip the lock tongue and press the red button in the buckle » Fig. 6 - B, the lock tongue pops out.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING
The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

Seat belt for the rear middle seat

Read and observe ! on page 14 first.

The seat belt for the rear middle seat is anchored in the area of the boot on the left side of the headliner.

Fasten
› Pull the belt with both lock tongues out of the headliner mount.
› Insert the lock tongue at the end of the belt into the belt buckle on the left side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull the second lock tongue, which is moveable on the seat belt, over the chest and insert it into the belt buckle on the right side until it is heard to lock in place.
› Pull on the belt to check that it has engaged correctly in the lock.

The lock tongue of the belt is shaped differently so that it only fit into the respective belt buckle. If you are not able to insert a lock tongue into the wrong belt lock you probably tried to put it into the wrong buckle.

Release
› Take off the safety belt in the reverse order to how you fasten it.
› Guide the belt back by hand so that the seat belt does not twist and the webbing rolls up fully.

WARNING
▪ After releasing the seat belt hold it tight and let it slowly reel up until both lock tongues lock into the headliner mount and are secured with a magnet - there is a risk of injury.
▪ Never unlock the two buckle tongues at the same time -There is a risk of injury.
▪ The slot of the belt tongue must not be blocked otherwise the belt tongue will not lock in place properly.

Inertia reels and belt tensioners

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Inertia reel 16
Belt tensioners 16

Inertia reel

Each seat belt is equipped with an inertia reel.

When pulling slowly on the seat belt, the belt can move freely. When pulling sharply on the seat belt, the movement is locked by the inertia reel. The belts also lock when full braking, when the car accelerates, when driving downhill and when cornering.

WARNING
If the seat belt does not lock when pulling sharply on it, have it inspected immediately by a specialist garage.

Belt tensioners

Safety for the driver and front passenger **wearing their seat belts** is enhanced by the belt tensioners fitted to the inertia reels of the front three-point seat belts.

If there is a collision of a certain severity, the seat belts are tightened by the belt tensioner so that unwanted body motion is prevented.

Belt tensioners are **not activated** in the event of **minor** collisions, in the case of a roll-over and also not in accidents in which no major forces are produced. ▸

WARNING

- Any work on the belt tensioner system, including the removal and installation of system components because of other repair work, must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- If the belt tensioners have been deployed, it is then necessary to replace the entire system.

Note

- The belt tensioners can also be deployed if the seat belts are not fastened.
- Smoke is generated when the belt tensioners are deployed. This is not an indication of a fire in the vehicle.

Airbag system

Description of the airbag system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

System description 17
Airbag deployment 18
Safety instructions 19

The airbag system provides, as a supplement to the seat belts, additional occupant protection during severe frontal and side-on collisions.

The airbag will only provide optimum protection in conjunction with wearing the seat belt - the airbag is not a substitute for the seat belts.

The functional status of the airbag system is indicated by the indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 38.

System description

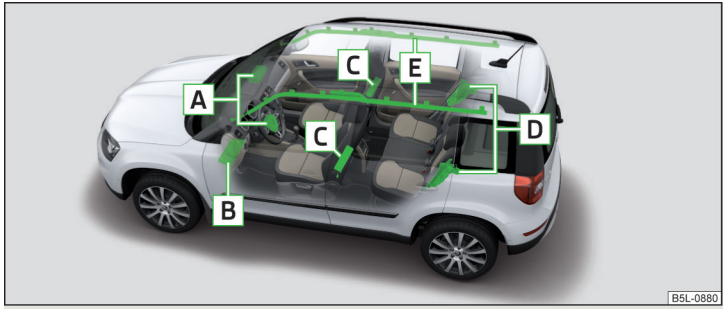


Fig. 7 **Airbag installation points**

Airbag installation points » Fig. 7

A Front airbags
B Driver's knee airbag
C Front side airbags

D Rear side airbags
E Head airbags

Front airbags - the forward thrust of the driver and of the front passenger is cushioned when they make contact with the fully-inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The front airbags can be identified by the lettering **AIRBAG** featured on the steering wheel and on the dashboard on the passenger side.

Driver´s knee airbag - The forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to the legs of the driver is thus reduced.

The knee airbag is provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** on the dashboard on the driver's side.

Side airbags - the load of the occupants is cushioned when plunged into the fully inflated airbag. The risk of injury to the entire upper body (chest, stomach and pelvis) is reduced on the side facing the door.

The side air bags can be identified by a label with the lettering **AIRBAG** marked on the front seat backrests. The rear side airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** in between the entrance area and the rear seat backrest.

Head airbags - the forward movement of the body is cushioned when it makes contact with the fully inflated airbag, and the risk of injury to head and chest is thus reduced.

The head airbags are provided with the lettering **AIRBAG** marked on the B-pillar cladding.

Depending on the vehicle equipment, the airbag system consists of the following parts.
- Individual airbags.
- Indicator light in the instrument cluster » page 38.
- Key switch for the front passenger airbag » page 21.
- Warning light for the front passenger airbag in the middle of the dash panel » page 21.

Airbag deployment



Fig. 8 **Inflated airbags**

The airbag system is only functional when the ignition is switched on.

When triggered, the airbag fills with gas and unfolds. The inflation of the airbag is carried out in a fraction of a second.

When the airbag inflates, smoke is released. This is not a sign of a fire in the vehicle.

Triggering conditions
It is not possible to generally determine which deployment conditions apply to the airbag system in every situation. The important factors here are the hardness of the object with which the vehicle collides, the angle of impact, vehicle speed etc.

A decisive factor in the deployment of the airbags is the degree of deceleration at the time. If the vehicle deceleration which occurs and is measured during the collision remains below the prescribed reference values specified in the control unit, the airbags are not deployed although the vehicle may well suffer severe damage to the bodywork as a consequence of the accident.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe frontal collision.
- Driver's front airbag.
- Front passenger airbag.
- Driver's knee airbag.

The following airbags will be deployed in the event of a severe side collision.
- Front side airbag.
- Rear side airbag.
- Head airbag.

When an airbag is deployed, the following events occur.
- The hazard warning lights are switched on.
- All doors are unlocked.
- The fuel supply to the engine is interrupted.
- The interior light comes on (if the automatic operation of the interior light is switched on - position).

When there is no air bag deployment?
With **minor** frontal and side collisions, rear collision, overturning of the vehicle or vehicle roll-over there is no airbag deployment.

Safety instructions

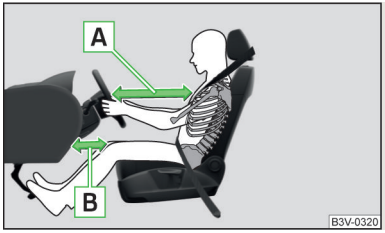


Fig. 9
Safe distance from the steering wheel and dashboard

WARNING

General information

- **The seat belts and the airbag system can only offer optimum protection if the driver and passengers are seated properly** » page 11.
- The airbag unleashes enormous force when triggered, which can lead to serious injuries or fatalities if the driver and passengers are not seated properly. This applies in particular to children who are transported without using a suitable child safety seat » page 24.
- If there is a fault, have the airbag system checked immediately by a specialist garage. Otherwise, there is a risk of the airbag not being activated in the event of an accident.

WARNING (Continued)

- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must then be replaced.
- In the area of the front airbag and the knee airbag, the surface of the steering wheel and the dashboard should be cleaned using only a dry cloth or one that has been dampened with water.

WARNING

Information about the front airbags

- For the driver and front passenger it is important to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm to the steering wheel or the panel » Fig. 9 - A, If you do not keep this distance, the airbag system will not be able to protect you - There is a risk to life! The front seats and the head restraints must always also be correctly adjusted to match the body size of the occupant.
- The front passenger airbag must be deactivated if using a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat » page 20, *Airbag deactivation*. If this is not done, there is a risk of the child suffering severe or even fatal injuries if the front passenger airbag is deployed.
- No other persons, animals or objects should be placed in front of the occupants in the front seats in the deployment area of the front airbags.
- The steering wheel and the surface of the dashboard on the passenger side must not be stickered, covered or modified in any way. No parts (e.g. cup holders, mobile phone mounts and the like) may be mounted near the airbag installation points and in the airbag deployment area.
- Never place objects on the surface of the dashboard on the passenger side.

WARNING

Information about knee airbags

- Adjust the driver's seat in a forward/back direction so that there is a gap of at least 10 cm between the legs and the dashboard in the vicinity of the knee airbag » Fig. 9 - B. If it is not possible to meet this requirement due to your body size, visit a specialist garage.
- The surface of the airbag module in the lower part of the dash panel below the steering column not have stickers attached, be covered or modified in any other way. Nothing may be attached to the cover of the airbag module or located within the immediate vicinity.
- Do not attach any bulky and heavy objects (bunch of keys etc.) to the ignition key. These can be ejected by the knee airbag when it is deployed and can cause injuries.

WARNING

Information about for side and head airbags

- No objects (e.g. sun visors turned towards the windows) should be located in the deployment area of the side and head airbags. No accessories (e.g. cup holders etc.) should be fitted to the doors - There is a risk of an injury!
- Hang only light clothing on the hooks in the vehicle, do not leave any heavy or sharp objects in the pockets. Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes.
- The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Additional information » page 134.
- No excessive force, e.g. through blows, kicks etc. should be applied to the seat backrests - there is a risk of damage to the side airbags. The side airbags would not be deployed in such a case!
- Any seat or protective covers which you fit to the driver or front passenger seats must only be of a type expressly authorised by ŠKODA AUTO. In view of the fact that the airbag inflates out of the backrest of the seat, use of non-approved seat or protective covers would considerably impair the protective function of the side airbag.
- Any damage to the original seat covers or stitching at the installation points for the side airbags should be immediately repaired by a specialist company.

WARNING

Information on the use of the airbag system

- Any work on the airbag system, including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel), must only be carried out by a specialist garage. Additional information » page 134.
- No changes of any sort should be made to parts of the airbag system, the front bumper or the bodywork.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.

Airbag deactivation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Deactivating airbags 20
Deactivating the front passenger airbag 21

Deactivating airbags

The front passenger airbag can be switched off with the key-operated switch » Fig. 10 *on page 21* - A.

We recommend that you ask a ŠKODA service partner to deactivate any other airbags.

An indicator light indicates that the airbag has been deactivated» page 38.

Deactivating an airbag should be considered in cases such as the ones below.

- If a child seat must be used on the front passenger seat, where the child is transported facing towards the rear» page 22.
- If it is not possible to maintain a distance of at least 25 cm between the middle of the steering wheel and chest, despite the driver's seat being correctly adjusted.
- If special attachments are required in the area of the steering wheel because of a physical disability.
- If different seats have been fitted (e.g. orthopaedic seats without side airbags).

WARNING

If an airbag is deactivated at the time of the vehicle being sold, the purchaser must be informed!

Deactivating the front passenger airbag

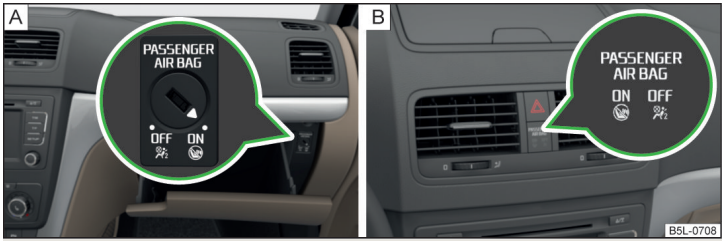


Fig. 10 **Key-operated switch for the front passenger airbag / warning light for front passenger airbag**

Switch positions » Fig. 10 - A

OFF The front passenger airbag is deactivated - after the ignition is switched on, the indicator light OFF » Fig. 10 illuminates - B

ON The front passenger airbag is switched on - after switching on the ignition, the warning light illuminates for 65 seconds ON

Switch off

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **OFF**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the indicator light OFF lights up after the ignition is switched on.

Switching on

› Switch off the ignition.
› Open the storage box on the front passenger's side.
› Fold the key bit out **completely** for the radio key » !.
› Carefully insert the key into the key slot in the key switch as far as the stop.
› Use the key to turn the slot of the key switch carefully into the position **ON**.
› Pull the key out of the slot in the key switch » !.
› Close the storage compartment on the front passenger side.
› Check that the indicator light ON lights up after the ignition is switched on.

! WARNING

- The key cannot be inserted into the key switch while driving. Shocks can cause the key to turn in the slot and trigger the airbag! The airbag can be triggered unexpectedly in an accident - it may result in injury or death!
- The driver is responsible for whether the airbag is switched on or switched off.
- Only switch off the airbag when the ignition is switched off! Otherwise a fault can occur in the system for deactivating the airbag.
- If the ON OFF warning lights flash, the front passenger airbag will not be deployed in the event of an accident! Have the airbag system checked by a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

An insufficiently folded out key bit can damage the key switch!

Transporting children safely

Child seat

Introduction

To reduce the risk of injury in an accident, children should only be transported in child seats!

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 23
Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat 23
Child safety and the side airbag 24
Classification of child seats 24
Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt 24

Please refer to the instructions in this Owner's Manual and the child seat manufacturer's instructions with regard to the installation and use of the child seat.

For safety reasons, we recommend that you always transport children on the rear seats. Only transport a child on the passenger seat in exceptional circumstances.

Child seats complying with the ECE-R 44 Economic Commission for Europe standard must be used.

Child seats that comply with the ECE-R 44 standard are identified with a test mark that cannot be removed: a large E within a circle with the test number below.

WARNING

- One should never carry children, and also not babies! - on one's lap.
- When leaving the vehicle, do not leave children unattended in the vehicle. In an emergency, they might not be able to get out of the vehicle on their own or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!
- The child must be secured in the vehicle during the entire journey! Otherwise, the child would be thrown through the vehicle in the event of an accident, causing fatal injuries to both the child and other occupants.

WARNING (Continued)

- Children are exposed to an increased risk of injury in the event of an accident if they lean forward or adopt an incorrect seated position when the vehicle is moving. This particularly applies to children who are transported on the front passenger seat as they can suffer severe, or even fatal injuries if the airbag system is deployed!
- Pay particular attention to the information provided by the manufacturer of the child safety seat regarding the correct routing of the belt. Seat belts which are not correctly adjusted can themselves cause injuries even in minor accidents.
- Safety belts must be checked to ensure that they are running properly. One should also ensure that the belt is not damaged by sharp-edged fittings.
- When installing the child seat on the back seat, the corresponding front seat must be adjusted so that there is no contact between the front seat and the child seat or the child being transported in a child seat.
- When installing a child seat in which the child faces forward, adjust the head restraints so that they are as high as possible.
- If the headrests still prevent the child seat from being installed, even in the highest position, you will need to remove them » page 75. After removing the child seat, refit the head restraints.

Note

We recommend that you use child seats from ŠKODA Original Accessories. These child seats were developed and also tested for use in ŠKODA vehicles. They meet the ECE-R 44 standard.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Does not apply to Taiwan



Fig. 11 **Warning labels**

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Never use a rearward-facing child restraint system on a seat which is protected by an active airbag. This could cause serious injury to the child, even death.

This warning is also given on stickers that are located in the following places.
- On the front passenger sun visor » Fig. 11 - A.
- On the B-column on the front passenger side » Fig. 11 – B.

The following instructions must be followed when using a child seat on the front passenger seat.
- It is essential to deactivate the front passenger airbag if using a child seat in which the child is transported with its back facing the direction of travel » !.
- If possible, adjust the front passenger seat backrest so that it is as vertical, so as to ensure secure contact between the passenger seat backrest and the back of the child seat.
- If possible, move the front passenger seat backwards so that there is no contact between the front passenger seat and the child seat behind it.
- Set the height-adjustable front passenger seat as high up as possible.
- Set the front passenger seat belt as high up as possible.
- With child safety seats in groups 2 and 3, make sure that the loop-around fittings attached to the child seat headrest is positioned in front of or at the same height as the loop-around fittings on the B pillar on the passenger side.

Adjust the height of the front passenger seat belt so that the belt does not "jam" in the return pulley. In the event of an accident, there is the risk of injury to the neck of the child carried due to the seat belt!

! WARNING

- **Never** use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.
- Once a child seat in which the child is transported with its back to the direction of travel is no longer being used on the passenger seat, the front passenger airbag should be reactivated.

Use of a child seat on the front passenger seat

Applies to Taiwan



Fig. 12
Warning labels

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

No babies, infants or children to be carried on the passenger seat.

A label to this effect can also be found on the front passenger's sun visor » Fig. 12.

Child safety and the side airbag

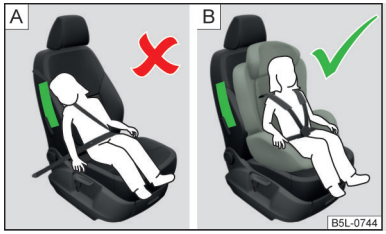


Fig. 13
Incorrect seated position of a child who is not properly secured – risk from the side airbag/Child properly protected by safety seat

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

The child must not be positioned in the deployment area of the side airbag » Fig. 13 - A.

There must be sufficient room between the child and the deployment area of the side airbag that the airbag can provide as much protection as possible » Fig. 13 – B.

Classification of child seats

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Classification of child seats according to the ECE-R 44 standard.

Group	Weight of the child
0	up to 10 kg
0	up to 13 kg
1	9-18 kg
2	15-25 kg
3	22-36 kg

Use of child safety seats which are secured using a seat belt

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Read and observe ! on page 22 first.

Overview of the usability of child seats fastened with a seat belt on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Front passenger seat	Rear seats External	Rear seat Center
0 up to 10 kg	U	U	U
0+ up to 13 kg	U	U	U
1 9-18 kg	U	U	U
2 15-25 kg	U	U	U[a)]
3 22-36 kg	U	U	U[a)]

[a)] If the middle rear seat is not provided with a headrest, then a child seat of Group 2 or 3 is only to be used if this has its own built-in headrest. If the child seat of Group 2 or 3 does not have its own built-in headrest, the child seat must be attached to the outer rear seat.

U "Universal" child seat category - a child seat designed to be attached to the seat using the seat belt.

Fastening systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

attachment points of the ISOFIX system ____ 25
Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system ____ 25
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system ____ 26

attachment points of the ISOFIX system



Fig. 14
Labels of the system ISOFIX

ISOFIX is a system for securing child seats quickly and safely.

There are two fixing eyes between the seat backrest and the seat cushion of the front passenger seat for fixing a child seat with the ISOFIXsystem.

On the rear outside seats, the fixing eyes are located below the upholstery. The places are marked with labels with the ISOFIX logo » Fig. 14.

! WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions of the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the ISOFIX system.
- Never attach other child seats, belts or objects to the attachment points intended for the installation of a child seat with the ISOFIX system – risk of death!

i Note

- A child seat fitted with the ISOFIX system can only be mounted in a vehicle fitted with a ISOFIX system if the child seat has been approved for this type of vehicle. Further information is available from a ŠKODA Partner.
- Child seats with the ISOFIX system can be purchased from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Use of child safety seats with the ISOFIX system

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the front passenger airbag is activated. This child safety seat is positioned in the deployment area of the front passenger airbag. The airbag may cause the child severe, or even fatal injuries, in the event of it being deployed.

Overview of the use-ability of the child seats fastened with the ISOFIX system on each of the seats in accordance with the ECE-R 16 standard.

Group	Size class of the child seat[a)]	Front passenger seat[b)]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
0 up to 10 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
0+ up to 13 kg	E	X	IL-SU	X
	D			
	C			

Group	Size class of the child seat[a]	Front passenger seat[b]	Outer rear seats	Rear seat middle
1 9-18 kg	D	**X**	**IL-SU IUF**	**X**
	C			
	B			
	B1			
	A			
2 15-25 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**
3 22-36 kg	-	**X**	**IL-SU**	**X**

[a] The size category is shown on the label attached to the child seat.
[b] If the front passenger seat is fitted with ISOFIXsystem attachment points, it is suitable for the installation of an ISOFIX child seat with "Semi-Universal" approval.

IL-SU The seat is suitable for the use of approved child seats in ISOFIXin the "Semi-Universal"category. The "Semi-Universal" category means that the child seat with the ISOFIX system is approved for your vehicle. Observe the list of vehicles that comes with the child seat.

IUF The seat is suitable for the installation of a ISOFIX child seat with "Universal" approval and attachment with the TOP TETHER system belt.

X The seat is not fitted with ISOFIX system attachment points.

Attachment points of the TOP TETHER system

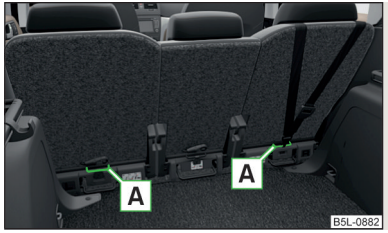


Fig. 15
Attachment points of the TOP TETHER-system

TOP TETHER is a fastening system, which restricts the movement of the upper part of the child seat.

The locking eyes A for attaching the belt of a child seat with the TOP TETHER system are located on the rear side of the outer rear seat backrests » Fig. 15.

WARNING

- Always refer to the instructions from the manufacturer of the child seat when installing and removing a child seat with the TOP TETHER system.
- Only use child seats with the TOP TETHER system on the seats with the attachment points.
- Only ever attach one belt from the child seat to a locking eye.

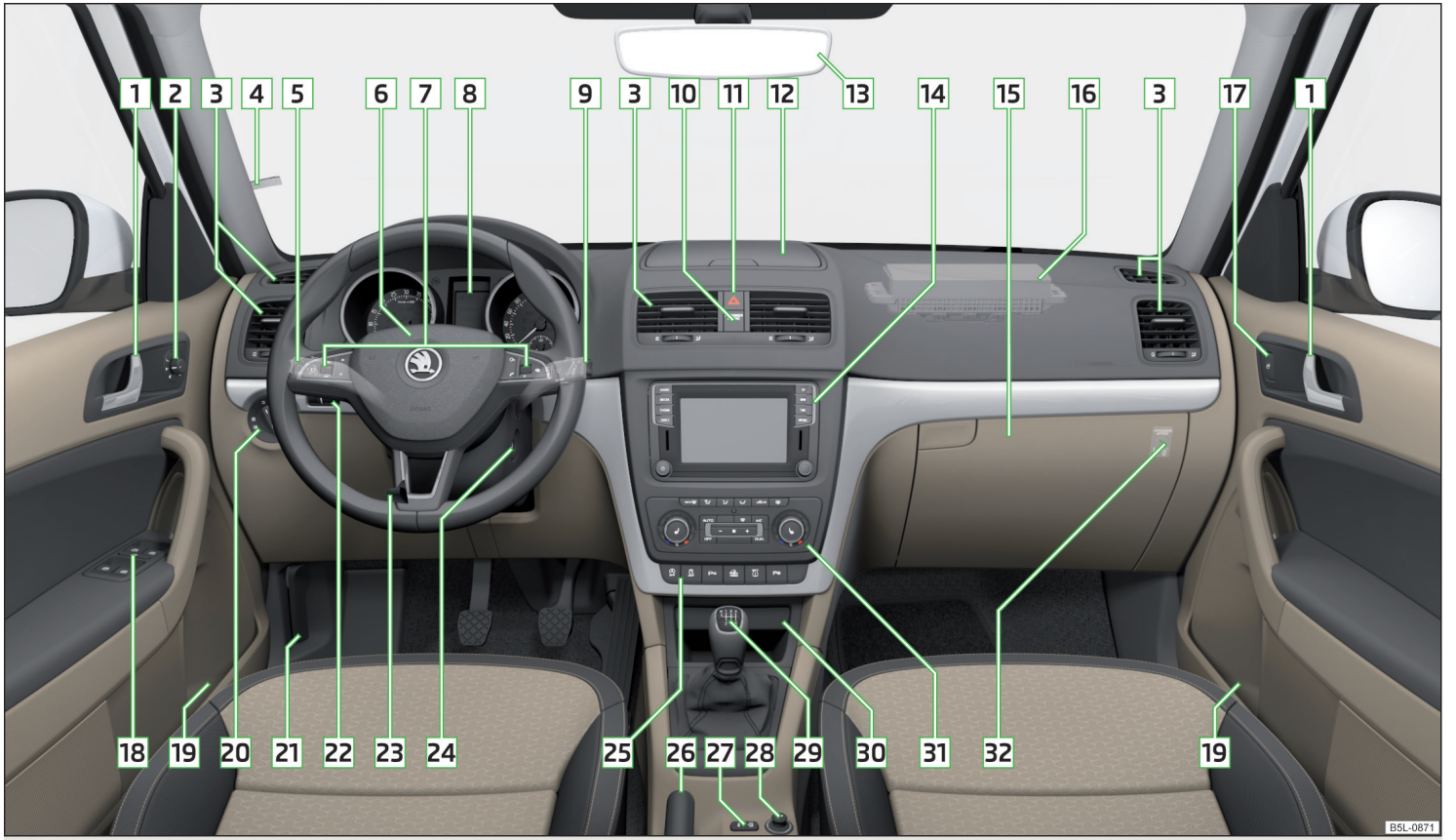


Fig. 16 **Cockpit example for LHD models**

Using the system

Cockpit

Overview

1 Door opening lever — 52
2 Electric exterior mirror adjustment — 69
3 Air outlet vents — 98
4 Ticket holder — 77
5 Operating lever (depending on equipment):
- ▶ Direction and high beam — 61
- ▶ Speed regulating system — 123

6 Steering wheel with horn / with driver's front airbag — 17
7 Buttons for operating the information system — 40
8 Instrument cluster — 30
9 Operating lever:
- ▶ Windscreen wipers and washers — 66
- ▶ information system — 40

10 Warning light for the front passenger airbag — 21
11 Button for hazard warning light system — 63
12 Storage compartment — 78
13 Interior rear-view mirror — 68
14 Depending on specification:
- ▶ Radio
- ▶ Infotainment

15 Storage compartment on the front passenger side — 83
16 Front passenger airbag — 17
17 Electric window in the front passenger door — 56
18 Electric windows — 56
19 Storage compartment — 78
20 Light switch — 60
21 Bonnet release lever — 145
22 Regulator for the instrument lighting and regulator for the headlight beam range adjustment — 31, 60
23 Steering wheel locking lever — 12
24 Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ Ignition lock — 103
- ▶ Starter button — 103

25 Bar with keys depending on the equipment fitted:
- ▶ START STOP — 104
- ▶ Traction control TCS — 113
- ▶ Electronic Stability Control ESC — 112
- ▶ Parking aid — 116
- ▶ OFF ROAD-mode — 114
- ▶ Tyre pressure control indicator — 125
- ▶ Park Assist — 120

26 Handbrake lever — 106
27 Central locking system — 51
28 Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ 12 volt power socket — 81
- ▶ Cigarette lighter — 80

29 Depending on equipment fitted:
- ▶ Gearshift lever (manual gearbox) — 107
- ▶ Selector lever (automatic gearbox) — 108

30 Storage compartment — 78
31 Controls for heating / air conditioning — 95
32 Key switch for switching off the front passenger airbag (in front passenger storage compartment) — 21

Note

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 16.

Instruments and Indicator Lights

Instrument cluster

Introduction

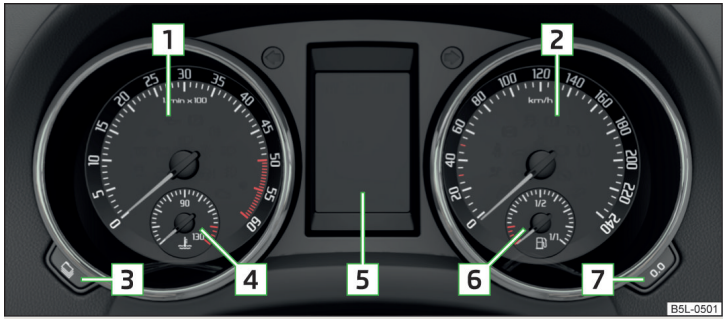


Fig. 17 **Instrument cluster**

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Rev counter 30
Coolant temperature gauge 31
Fuel gauge 31
Lighting of the instrument cluster 31
Auto Check Control 32

1 Engine revolutions counter » page 30
- with warning lights » page 33

2 Speedometer
- with warning lights » page 33

3 Operation key:
- Setting the time » page 41
- Switching the display for the second speedometer on/off[1] » page 41
- Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval[1] » page 46
- Show AdBlue range[1] » page 41

4 Coolant temperature gauge » page 31

5 Display » page 40

6 Fuel gauge » page 31

7 Operation key:
- Reset counter for distance travelled (trip) » page 40
- Setting the time
- Enable / disable the mode selected using the 3 button

Rev counter

The tachometer 1 » Fig. 17 *on page 30* shows the actual engine speed per minute.

The beginning of the tachometer red scale range indicates the maximum permitted speed for an engine that has been driven-in and has reached operating temperature.

You should shift into the next highest gear before the red scale of the revolution counter is reached, or select mode **D / S** on the automatic gearbox.

The gear recommendation is important to note in order to maintain the optimum engine speed » page 41.

CAUTION

The rev counter pointer may only move into the red area for a short time - otherwise there is a risk of engine damage!

[1] Applies to vehicles with a segment display.

Coolant temperature gauge

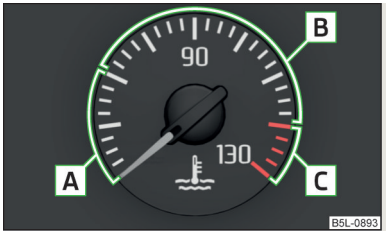


Fig. 18
Coolant temperature gauge

The display » Fig. 18 only works if the ignition is switched on.

Cold range - the pointer is in the range A, the engine has not yet reached its operating temperature. Avoid high speeds and high engine loads.

Operating range - the pointer is in the range B.

High temperature range - the pointer is in the range C. The coolant temperature is too high. The warning light » page 34 illuminates in the instrument cluster .

Fuel gauge

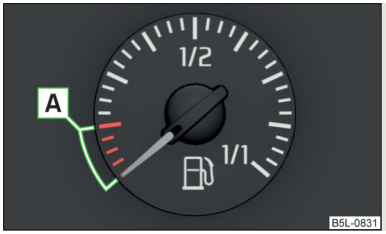


Fig. 19
Fuel gauge

The display » Fig. 19 only works if the ignition is switched on.

The tank capacity is 55 litres or approximately 60 litres for Yeti 4x4.

If the fuel level reaches the reserve level A » Fig. 19, the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster» page 38.

WARNING

For the vehicle systems to function correctly, and thus for safe driving, there must be sufficient fuel in the tank. Never drain the fuel tank completely – risk of accident!

CAUTION

Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.

Note

After filling up, it can occur that during dynamic driving (e.g. numerous curves, braking, driving downhill and climbing a steep hill) the fuel gauge indicates a fraction less.

Lighting of the instrument cluster



Fig. 20
Controller for instrument cluster lighting

The brightness of the of the instrument cluster lighting can be adjusted individually when the dipped beam / parking light is switched.

› To **Control of lighting brightness** the regulator of the instrument cluster turn » Fig. 20.

Note

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, the brightness of the instrument lighting is set automatically. A manual brightness adjustment can therefore only have a limited effect.

Auto Check Control

Vehicle condition
Certain functions and conditions of individual vehicle systems are checked continuously when the ignition is switched on. If there is a system failure, the relevant message is displayed in the MAXI DOTDisplay, in conjunction with indicator lights, if necessary, indicator light illumination takes place in the instrument cluster» page 33, *Warning lights*.

The menu item **Vehicle status** is shown in the main menu of the MAXI DOT display whenever at least one fault message exists. After selecting this menu, the first of the error messages is displayed.

Several error messages are shown on the display under the message e.g. **1/3**. This indicates that the first of a total of three error messages is being displayed.

Warning lights in the MAXI DOT display

	Engine oil pressure too low	» page 35
	Check engine oil level Engine oil sensor defective	» page 147
	Engine-speed limitation	» page 32
	Water in fuel filter (diesel engine).	» page 32
	Automatic gearbox DSG overheated	» page 32
	AdBlue® level too low	» page 32

Engine-speed limitation
The information about the maximum permissible engine speed is displayed together with this indicator light.

- Do not exceed the indicated maximum engine speed!
- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Water in the fuel filter (diesel engine)
The fuel filter with water separator, filters out dirt and water from the fuel.

If too much water is present in the separator, the following information appears on the instrument cluster display.

The indicator light is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Illuminates
M Water in fuel filter. Log book!
S FUEL FILTER SEE MANUAL

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Automatic gearbox DSG
M Gearbox overheated. Stop! Log book!

- **Stop driving!** Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine.

You can continue your journey as soon as the warning light disappears.

- If the indicator light does not go out, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

/ AdBlue®level too low
The indicator light and is only shown in the MAXI DOTdisplay.

Further information on refilling of AdBlue ® is shown in the display.

M Refill AdBlue (DEF)! Range: ...
S ADBLUE RANGE ...

The range in the display indicates the distance that can be driven with the remaining AdBlue® left in the tank.

- Add AdBlue® » page 144.

M Refill AdBlue (DEF)! No engine start in ...
S ADBLUE NO START IN ...

The range in the display indicates the distance to travel, after which no engine restart is possible, as long as no AdBlue® is added.

- Add AdBlue® » page 144.

M Refill AdBlue (DEF)! No engine start possible.
S ADBLUE NO RESTART

It is no longer possible to start the engine.

- Refill AdBlue® » page 144.

WARNING

If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 63. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.

Note

▪ If the MAXI DOT display shows warning messages, these messages must be confirmed in order to access the main menu » page 42 .
▪ As long as the operational faults are not rectified, the warning lights are always indicated again. After they are displayed for the first time, the warning lights continue to be indicated without any extra messages for the driver.

Warning lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 34
Braking system 34
Front seat belt indicator light 34
Alternator 34
Door open 34
Coolant 34
Boot lid 34
Power steering / steering lock (KESSY system) 35
Engine oil 35
Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS) 36
Traction control (TCS) deactivated 36
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 36
Rear fog light 36
Lamp failure 36
Xenon headlights (AFS) 36
Emission control system 37
Preheating unit (diesel) 37
EPC Control of the engine electronics (gasoline engine) 37
Diesel particle filter (diesel) 37
Fuel reserve 38
Airbag system 38
Tyre pressure 38
Windscreen washer fluid level 39
Turn signal system 39
Fog lights 39
Cruise control system 39
Brake pedal (automatic transmission) 39
OFF ROADmode 39
High beam 39
Display of a low temperature 39

The warning lights in the instrument cluster indicate certain functions or faults.

Some warning lights can be accompanied by acoustic signals and messages in the display of the instrument cluster.

After switching on the ignition, some warning lights **light up** briefly as a function test. If the tested systems are OK, the corresponding warning lights go **out** a few seconds after switching on the ignition or after starting the engine.

The warning lights are located at the following positions in the instrument cluster » Fig. 17 *on page 30*.
▸ Engine revolutions counter 1
▸ Speedometer 2
▸ Display 5

WARNING

▪ Ignoring illuminated warning lights and related messages or instructions in the display of the instrument cluster may lead to serious personal injury or damage to the vehicle.
▪ If you have to stop for technical reasons, then park the vehicle at a safe distance from the traffic, switch off the engine and switch on the hazard warning light system » page 63. Place the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
▪ The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area. The following warning instructions must be followed at all times when working in the engine compartment » page 144, *Engine compartment*.

Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

(P) lights up – the hand brake has been applied.

An acoustic signal will sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h while the handbrake is still on.

▸ Release the handbrake.

Braking system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

(!) illuminates – the brake fluid level in the brake system is too low.

▸ Park the vehicle, STOP **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

! WARNING

A fault to the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance - There is risk of accident!

Front seat belt indicator light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up - the driver or front passenger has not fastened their seat belt.

At a speed of over 20 km/h, the indicator light flashes and an audible warning sounds at the same time.

If the seat belt is not fastened by the driver or front passenger during the next approx. 2 minutes, the warning signal is deactivated and the warning light illuminates permanently.

Alternator

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the battery is not being charged whilst the engine is running.

▸ As the battery discharges while driving, all non-essential electrical loads (e.g. Infotainment) should be switched off.
▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

If, in addition to the light the light lights up while driving, **stop driving** - There is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Door open

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - one or more doors are open.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 40 .

Coolant

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up or flashes – the coolant temperature is too high or the coolant level is too low.

▸ Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and allow the engine to cool down.
▸ Check the coolant level » page 148, *Checking and refilling*.

If the coolant level is within the specified range and the warning light lights up again, there may be a malfunction of the cooling fan.

▸ Switch off the ignition.
▸ Check the fuse for the radiator fan, replace if necessary.

If the coolant level and fan fuse are both OK but the warning light lights up again, STOP **stop driving!**

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

Boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates - the boot lid is open.

On vehicles with MAXI DOT display, this indicator is replaced by a vehicle icon on the display » page 40 .

Power steering / steering lock (KESSY system)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Fault in the power steering

lights up – this indicates a complete failure of the power steering and the steering assist is no longer working (significantly higher steering forces).

lights up – this indicates a partial failure of the power steering and the steering forces can be greater.

- Switch off the ignition, start the engine again and travel a short distance.
- If the warning light does not go out, stop the vehicle, **Stop driving!**. Seek help from a specialist garage.
- If the warning light does not go out, you can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Steering column lock not unlocked (System KESSY)

flashes - for vehicles with the KESSY system, the steering lock is not released.

- Move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, thereby facilitating unlocking the steering lock.
- If the steering does also not unlock then, the help of a specialist garage is required.

Steering lock defect (KESSY system)

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

flashes — **Steering column lock faulty.**

- Park the vehicle, **stop driving**. After switching off the ignition, it is no longer possible to lock the steering, to activate the electrical components (e.g. Infotainment), to switch on the ignition again and to start the engine. Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes — **Steering lock: Workshop!**

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after the motor is restarted and a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Engine oil

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Low oil pressure

flashes — **Oil pressure: Engine off! Log book!**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level.
- If the warning light flashes , **do not drive an further!**even if the oil level is correct! Also do not leave the engine running at an idling speed.
- Seek help from a specialist garage.

Engine oil level too low

Illuminates — **Check oil level!**

- Stop the vehicle, switch off the engine, and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary.

The warning light will go out if the bonnet is left open for more than 30 seconds. If the engine oil is not replenished, the warning light will come on again after driving about 100 km.

Fault on the engine oil level sensor

flashes — **Oil sensor: Workshop!**

The warning light flashes several times after switching on the ignition and there is audible signal.

- Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! CAUTION

If, under the given conditions, it is not possible to top up with engine oil, **stop driving** - there is a risk of engine damage! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Stability control (ESC) / Traction control (TCS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

If your vehicle is equipped with the ESC system, the TCS is part of the ESC system.

flashes – the ESC or TCS is currently active.

System fault
lights up – there is an ESC or TCS fault.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

If the warning light comes on after starting the engine, the TCS may be switched off for technical reasons.
▸ Switch the ignition off and on again.

If the warning light does not illuminate after you switch the engine back on, the ASR is fully functional again.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery
If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the warning light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ You can drive on, exercising appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

For more information on the ESC system » page 112 or TCS system » page 113.

Traction control (TCS) deactivated

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the TCS system is disabled.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – there is an ABS fault.

The vehicle will only be braked by the normal brake system without the ABS.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- If the warning light lights up together with the warning light » page 34, **stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.
- A fault to the ABS system or the braking system can increase the vehicle's braking distance – risk of accident!

Rear fog light

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the rear fog light is switched on.

Lamp failure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – one of the vehicle's exterior lights is defective. A message will appear in the display about the affected lamp.

illuminates within a few seconds after switching on the ignition or when a light with a faulty bulb is switched on.

Xenon headlights (AFS)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes for 1 minute while driving or after the ignition is switched on - there is a fault in the xenon headlights (AFS).

The MAXI DOT display shows the following.

Note
With the Xenon headlight "tourist light" (travel mode) activated, the warning light flashes after switching on the ignition for 10 seconds.

Emission control system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – there is a fault in the emission control system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Preheating unit (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The warning light comes on after the ignition has been switched on. Once the light has gone out, the engine can be started immediately. There is a fault in the glow plug system if the warning light does not come on or illuminates continuously.

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

flashes – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

EPC Control of the engine electronics (gasoline engine)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

EPC lights up – there is a fault in the engine management system. The system makes it possible to drive on in emergency mode - there may be a noticeable reduction in engine performance.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Diesel particle filter (diesel)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

The diesel particulate filter separates the soot particles from the exhaust. The soot particles collect in the diesel particulate filter where they are burnt on a regular basis.

illuminates – the filter is clogged with soot.

To clean the filter, and where traffic conditions permit » !, drive as follows for at least 15 minutes or until the indicator light goes out.

✓ 4. Or 5. Gear engaged (Automatic gearbox: Position **S**).
✓ Vehicle speed at least 70 km/h.
✓ Engine speed between 1800-2500 rpm.

If the filter is properly cleaned, the warning light extinguishes.

If the filter is not properly cleaned, the warning light does not go out and the warning light begins to flash.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

! WARNING

- Always adjust the speed and driving style to the actual weather, road, terrain and traffic conditions.
- The diesel particulate filter reaches very high temperatures - there is a fire hazard and serious injury could be caused. Therefore, never stop the vehicle at places where the underside of your vehicle can come into contact with flammable materials, such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel or the like.

! CAUTION

- As long as the warning light illuminates, one must take into account an increased fuel consumption and a power reduction of the engine.
- Using diesel fuel with an increased sulphur content can considerably reduce the life of the diesel particle filter. A ŠKODA partner will be able to tell you which countries use diesel fuel with a high sulphur content.

i Note

We encourage you to avoid constant short journeys. This will improve the combustion process of the soot particles in the diesel particulate filter.

Fuel reserve

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fuel level in the fuel tank is at the reserve level (approximately 9 litres).

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Please refuel » page 141.

Note

The text in the display goes out after refuelling and driving a short distance.

Airbag system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

System fault

lights up - there is a fault in the airbag system.

Error: Airbag

▸ Seek help from a specialist garage.

The front passenger airbag has been disabled with the key switch

illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition has been switched on.

One of the airbags or a belt tensioner has been disabled by the diagnostic tool

illuminates for around 4 seconds after the ignition is switched on and then flashes for approximately 12 seconds.

Airbag / belt tensioner deactivated.

WARNING

When a fault in the airbag system occurs, there is a risk of the system not being triggered in the event of an accident. Therefore, this must be checked immediately by a specialized garage.

Tyre pressure

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

Change of tyre pressure values

lights up - there was a pressure change in one of the tyres.

An audible signal sounds as a warning.

▸ Immediately reduce speed and avoid sudden steering and braking manoeuvres.
▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and check the tyres and their inflation pressures » page 152.
▸ Correct the tyre pressure, if necessary or replace the affected wheel » page 157 or use the repair kit » page 161.
▸ Save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 125.

System fault

flashes for approximately 1 minute and remains lit – there may be a fault in the tyre pressure monitoring system.

▸ Stop the vehicle, turn the ignition off and start the engine again.

If the warning light flashes again after the engine has started, there is a system error.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Disconnecting the vehicle battery

If the vehicle's battery has been disconnected and reconnected, the indicator light comes on after switching on the ignition.

The warning light should go out after driving a short distance.

If, after a short drive, the indicator light does not go out, there is a system error.

▸ Continued driving is possible with appropriate caution. Seek assistance from a specialist garage immediately.

Other incidents

The following reasons can explain the warning light being illuminated.
▸ The vehicle is loaded on one side. Distribute the load evenly.
▸ The wheels of one axle are loaded more heavily (e.g. when towing a trailer or when driving uphill or downhill).
▸ Snow chains are mounted.
▸ A wheel has been changed.

CAUTION

Under certain circumstances (e.g. sporty style of driving, wintry or unpaved roads) the warning light can be delayed or does not light up at all.

Windscreen washer fluid level

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the windscreen washer fluid level is too low.

▸ Top up the windscreen washer fluid » page 146.

Turn signal system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

flashes – the left turn signal is turned on.

flashes – the right turn signal is turned on.

If there is a fault in the turn signal system, the warning light flashes at twice its normal rate (does not apply when towing).

When the hazard warning light system is switched on, this will cause all of the turn signal lights as well as both warning lights to flash.

Fog lights

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the fog lights are switched on.

Cruise control system

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the vehicle speed is regulated by the cruise control system.

Brake pedal (automatic transmission)

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – apply the brake.

OFF ROADmode

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the conditions for the engagement of OFF ROADmode are met» page 114, *OFF ROAD Mode*.

flashes – the hill descent assistant is engaged at the moment.

High beam

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

lights up – the main beam or the headlight flasher is switched on.

Display of a low temperature

Read and observe ! on page 33 first.

illuminates – the outside temperature is below +4 °C.

! WARNING

Even at temperatures of around +4 °C, black ice may still be on the road surface! You should therefore not only rely on the outside temperature display for accurate information as to whether there is ice on the road.

Information system

Driver information system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Display in the instrument cluster 40
Setting the time 41
Display of the second speedometer 41
Display of AdBlue range 41
Gear recommendation 41

Display in the instrument cluster

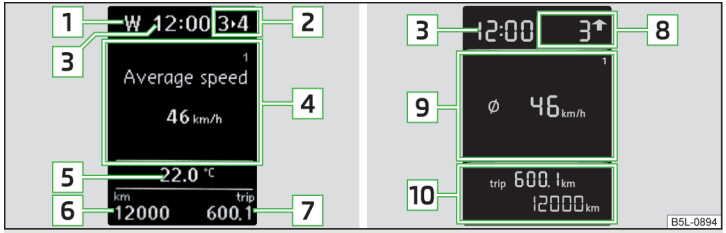


Fig. 21 **Display types: MAXI DOT / segment display**

Depending on the vehicle's equipment, the information system uses the display in the instrument cluster to provide the following information » Fig. 21.

1 Compass display[1)]
2 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
Warning lights of the START-STOP system
3 Time
4 Driving data (multi-function display - MFD)
Warning lights
Information messages
Door alarm
Service interval display
5 Outside temperature
6 Total distance travelled
Speed regulating system
7 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
8 Engaged gear / gear recommendation
Selector lever positions for the automatic gearbox
9 Driving data (multi-function display - MFD)
10 Distance travelled by resetting the memory (trip)
Total distance travelled / Second speedometer display
Speed regulating system
Service interval display
Information messages

Reset counter for distance travelled (trip)

› Press button B » Fig. 22 *on page 41*.

Door, luggage compartment and bonnet alarm

When the door or luggage compartment / bonnet is open, a warning indicator appears in theMAXI DOT display. An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

Segment display - with the door or tailgate open, the warning light or. illuminates in the instrument cluster. An acoustic signal will also sound if you drive the vehicle above 6 km/h when a door is open.

CAUTION

remove the ignition key when touching the display,(. E.g. when cleaning) (As regards vehicles with the KESSY system, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door) - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the display.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with factory-installed navigation system.

Setting the time

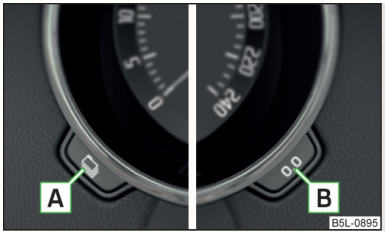


Fig. 22
Buttons in the instrument cluster

Use buttons A and B to set the time» Fig. 22.

A The choice to change the display (hours or minutes).

B The change of the displayed value.

In vehicles equipped with the MAXI DOT display, it is also possible to set the **Time** in the Time menu » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Display of the second speedometer

The display can show the current speed in mph[1]. This feature is provided for driving in countries with different speed units.

MAXI DOT display
The display of the second speedometer can be set in the **Alt. speed dis.** menu item » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Segment display
› Press button A » Fig. 22 *on page 41*repeatedly, until the odometer display flashes.
› Press the B button while the display flashes.

The second speedometer is displayed instead of the odometer. The display of the second speedometer is **switched off**in the same manner as it is switched on.

Display of AdBlue range

The display shows the distance in km that can still be driven with the remaining AdBlue tank capacity.

MAXI DOT display
The display of AdBlue range is part of the multi-function display » page 43, *Information overview*.

Segment display
› Press button A » Fig. 22 *on page 41* repeatedly until instead of total kilometres travelled, the AdBlue Range is displayed.
› Wait around 5 seconds - the system switches to the initial setting.

Gear recommendation

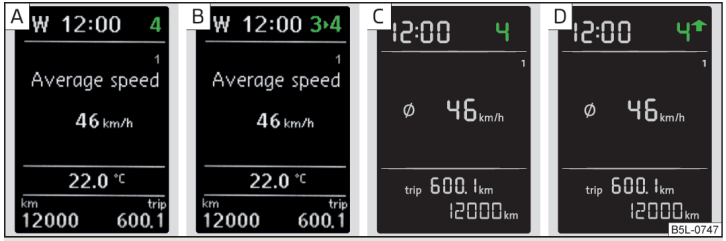


Fig. 23 **Information on the selected gear / Gear recommendation**

A suitable engaged gear or, where appropriate, a recommended gear is displayed, with the aim of conserving the life of the engine and increasing driving efficiency.

For vehicles with automatic transmission the recommended gear will be shown provided the mode for manual switching (Tiptronic) is selected.

Display
MAXI DOT display » Fig. 23

A Optimal gear engaged

B Gear recommendation (e.g. 3 ▶ 4 means that it is advantageous to switch from 3. to 4. gear)

Segment display » Fig. 23

C Optimal gear engaged

D Recommended gear
↑ - Recommends that you change up to a **higher** gear

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speedometer is displayed in km/h.

- Recommends that you change down to a **lower** gear
- On vehicles with a **manual** gearbox, the **recommended** gear and an arrow symbol is displayed (e.g. means that it is advantageous to change up from a lower gear to 4. gear).
- On vehicles with an **automatic** gearbox in manual shifting mode (Tiptronic), gear**currently engaged** and an arrow symbol is displayed, (e.g. means that it is advantageous to change up from 4 to a higher gear).

WARNING

The driver is always responsible for selecting the correct gear in different driving situations (e.g. when overtaking).

Operation of the information system

Operation via the operating lever

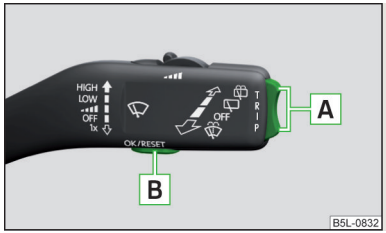


Fig. 24
Buttons on the control lever

Operating the multifunction display

A **Press** (up or down) - select data / Setting values

B **Press** - show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

A **Press** (up or down) - move to the selected menu
Hold (up or down) - display main menu

B **Press** - confirm selected menu item

Operation via the multifunction steering wheel

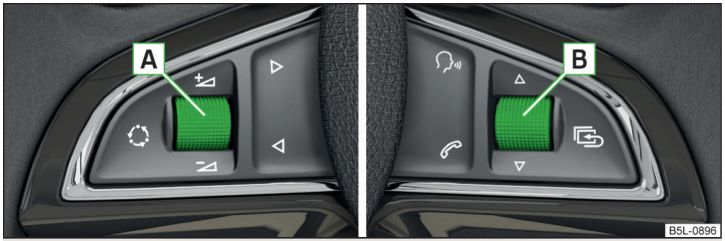


Fig. 25 **Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel**

Buttons/dials on the multifunction steering wheel

Press- Change frequency range (e.g. FM/AM/DAB) / Switch audio source (e.g. SD card/USB input)

A **Turn** - sets the volume
Press - sound on / off

Skip to next track/station

Switch to previous track/station

Switch on/off voice control

Press - display the phone menu; accept/end the call; select contact
Hold - repeat last call; reject call

Operating the multifunction display

B **Turn** - select data / set values
Press - show / confirm entry

Operating the MAXI DOT display

Hold - display main menu
Press - return to a previous level in the menu

B **Turn** - move in the selected menu
Press - confirm selected menu item

Note

Depending on equipment not all functions may be available. The system indicates this through a text message on the display.

Multifunction display (MFD)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Information overview 43
Warning when exceeding the set speed 43
Memory 44

The driving data is displayed in the multifunction display when is ignition is switched on. After the ignition is switched on, the function that was last selected before switching off the ignition is displayed.

If vehicles with MAXI DOTdisplay do not show the driving data after switching on the ignition, select the menu item **MFD** in the main menu and confirm » page 44, *MAXI DOT display*.

On vehicles with a MAXI DOT display, there is an option to fade out the units and some of the information » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Note

If the display of the second speed is activated in mph, the current speed is not indicated in km/h on the display.

Information overview

Overview of driving data (depending on the vehicle equipment fitted).

Exterior temperature - For vehicles with a MAXI DOT display this information is always shown.

Driving time - driving time since last clearing the memory.

Current fuel consumption - when the vehicle is stationary or moving slowly, the fuel consumption is displayed in l/h (in models in some countries the following appears --,- km/l).

Average fuel consumption - is calculated continuously since the last clearing of the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

AdBlue® range - drive distance in km which can be covered with the existing AdBlue®tank capacity and with the same driving style. If you drive more efficiently this value can increase.

Distance driven - distance driven since the memory was last cleared.

Average speed - value constantly recalculated, for distance since last clearing the memory. After erasing the memory, no data will appear for the first 300 m driven.

Current Speed - digital speedometer.

Oil temperature - if the temperature is lower than 50 °C or if there is a fault in the system for checking the oil temperature, the **---** symbols are displayed.

Warning when the preset speed is exceeded - allows the setting of a speed limit where, if exceeded, an acoustic warning signal and a warning message appears on the display of the instrument cluster.

Warning when exceeding the set speed

The system offers the possibility to set a speed limit beyond which an acoustic warning signal will sound and the following warning message (MAXI DOT Display) and the symbol appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

Adjust the speed limit while the vehicle is stationary

› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Set the desired speed limit.
› Confirm the set value, or wait several seconds; your settings will be saved automatically.

Adjusting the speed limit while the vehicle is moving

› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› Drive at the desired speed.
› Confirm the current speed as the speed limit.

The set speed limit can be manually adjusted later if needed.

Reset speed limit

› Select the menu item **Speed warning** at (M) or (S) and confirm.
› By confirming the speed stored in the memory, the speed limit is reset.

The set driving mode remains stored even after switching the ignition on and off.

Memory

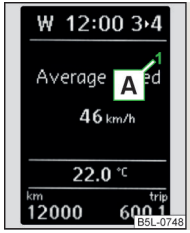


Fig. 26
Multi-function display - memory display

The system stores data from the two memories described below, which are then displayed at position A» Fig. 26.

"1" - Single-trip memory
Drive data is stored from when the ignition is switched on to when it is switched off. If the trip is continued **within 2 hours** after switching off the ignition, new data will also flow into the calculation of the current driving information.

If the trip is interrupted for **more than 2 hours**, the memory is automatically erased.

"2" - Long-term memory
The memory saves data from any number of individual journeys up to a total of 19 hours and 59 minutes or 1999 kilometres driven (S), and up to a total of 99 hours and 59 minutes or 9999 kilometres driven (M).

The indicator is automatically set back to zero if one of the indicated values is exceeded.

› For the **Storage choice**, repeatedly confirm the selected indication and select the desired memory.
› For **Deleting the memory** for the selected information, hold down the button confirming the specification.

The following driving data is stored in different memory banks.
▸ Average fuel consumption.
▸ Distance driven.
▸ Average speed.
▸ Driving time

Note
Disconnecting the vehicle battery will delete all memory data.

MAXI DOT display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Menu item**Navigation** 44
Menu item**Audio** 45
Menu item**Phone** 45
Menu item**Assistants** 45
Menu item **Settings** 45

The MAXI DOT display is a user interface which, depending on the equipment configuration, provides information about the Infotainment, the multifunction display, the assistance systems etc. Furthermore, it enables some other functions of your vehicle to be set.

The menus with details can be operated and displayed using the buttons on the operating lever or the multifunction steering wheel » page 42.

Main menu items (depending on vehicle equipment)
- **MFD** (Multifunction display) » page 43
- **Audio** » page 45
- **Navigation** » page 44
- **Phone** » page 45;
- **Aux. heating** » page 98
- **Assistants** » page 45
- **Vehicle status** » page 32
- **Settings** » page 45

Note
- If warning messages are displayed, these messages must be verified to access the main menu.
- The menu chosen always shifts to one of the higher levels after 10 seconds if the display is not currently active.

Menu itemNavigation

The following information is displayed in the **Navigation** menu item.

▸ Driving recommendations
▸ Compass
▸ Last destinations

Menu itemAudio

The following information is displayed in the **Audio** menu item.

Radio

- Currently playing station (name/frequency).
- The selected frequency range (e.g. FM) optionally with the number of the station button (e.g. FM 3), if the station is stored in the memory list.
- List of available stations (if more than 5 stations can be received).
- TP traffic announcements.

Media

- Name of the track being played, if necessary, further information regarding title (e.g. artist, album name), if this information is stored as a so called ID3 tag on the audio source.

Menu itemPhone

The call list with the following symbols is displayed in the **Telephone** menu item.

Incoming call
Outgoing call
Missed call

Symbols in the display

Charge status of the telephone battery[1)]
Signal strength[1)]
A telephone is connected to the unit
Missed calls (if there are several missed calls, the number of calls is shown next to the symbol)

Menu itemAssistants

In the **Assistants** menu item, the fatigue detection can be enabled/disabled » page 124.

Menu item Settings

There is an option to change certain settings using the display. The following information can be selected (depending on the equipment installed in the vehicle).

Language Setting the language for the texts shown on the display.

MFD data Switching on/off certain information of the multifunction display.

Comfort-Turn on / off or adjust the following functions.

ATA confirm	Switch on/off the audible signal indicating activation of the anti-theft alarm system» page 53, *Anti-theft alarm system*.
Central locking	Switch on/off the central locking and automatic locking function» page 52, *Individual settings*.
Window op.	Setting the comfort controls for the driver window or for all windows » page 57, *Window convenience operation*.
Mirror down	Activate/deactivate the function for lowering the mirror on the front passenger side when in reverse gear» page 69, *Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)*.
Mirror adjust.	Activation / deactivation of the synchronous exterior mirror function settings» page 69, *Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously*.
Factory setting.	Resetting the **Comfort** menu to the factory setting.

Lights & Vision - Turn on / off or adjust the following functions.

Coming Home	Activate/deactivate and adjust the light duration of the COMING HOME function» page 63.
Leaving Home	Switch on/off and adjust the light duration of the LEAVING HOME function» page 63.
Dayt. r. light	Activate/deactivate the daylight driving light» page 61, *Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)*.
Rear wiper	Activate/deactivate the function of the automatic rear window wiping» page 67, *Automatic rear wiper*.
Lane ch. flash	Activate/deactivate the Comfort Indicating function» page 61, *Comfort signalling*.

[1)] This function is only supported by some mobile phones.

Travel mode	Activate/deactivate the travel mode feature» page 64.
Factory setting.	Resetting **Lights & Vision**menu item to the factory setting.

Coasting -Enable / disable the idle position (coasting) for vehicles with automatic transmission » page 110, *Driving in neutral ("coasting")*.

Time - Setting the time, the time format (24 or 12 hour) and the change-over to summer/winter time.

Winter tyres - Setting the speed and the switching on and off of the acoustic signals when exceeding this speed. This function is, for example, used for winter tyres where the maximum permissible speed is lower than the maximum speed of the vehicle » page 152, *Wheels and tyres*. If the set speed is exceeded, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the information display.

Units - Setting the units for temperature, consumption and distance travelled.

Assistants - Adjustment of the sound in Park Assist» page 116, *Parking aid (ParkPilot)*.

Alt. speed dis. Turn on / off the display of the second speedometer in mph[1]» page 41, *Display of the second speedometer*.

ServiceDisplay the distance travelled and the days until the next service date» page 46, *Service interval display*.

Factory setting. - Resetting the display functions to factory settings.

Service interval display

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display 46
Prompt in the segment display 46
Resetting the service interval display 47

The service interval display shows the kilometres or days until the next service event.

Information regarding the service intervals » page 135.

Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
Once the service appointment is reached, a message appears in the display after switching on the ignition.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
Messages about the remaining kilometres and days until the next service date can be displayed at any time when the ignition is switched on by going to the **Service** menu item » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings** or from the **Vehicle status** in the main menu of the Maxi DOTdisplay. » page 44.

Prompt in the segment display

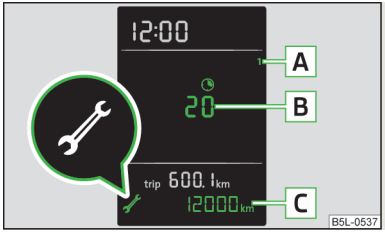


Fig. 27
Segment display: Example of a message

Explanation of figure » Fig. 27

- Service due
- **A** Differentiating between types of service
  - ▶ **1** - Oil change service
  - ▶ **2** - Inspection
- **B** - Days remaining until the next service interval
- **C** Kilometres remaining until the next service interval

[1] For models with the speedometer in mph, the second speedometer is displayed in km/h.

Messages before reaching the scheduled service date
Before the next service date has been reached, the symbol» Fig. 27 as well as a message about the mileage or days until the next service event appears in the display for approx. 10 seconds after switching on the ignition.

Messages upon reaching scheduled service date
As soon as the service date is reached, the flashing icon and the message appears in the display for about 20 seconds after the ignition is switched on.

Displaying the distance and days until the next service interval
Messages regarding kilometres and days until the next service date can be displayed at any time with the ignition switched on by pressing the button again A » Fig. 22 *on page 41*.

The following is shown in the displayed» Fig. 27 (First information on the**Oil Change Service**, By pressing the key again A » Fig. 22 *on page 41* Information on **Inspection**).

Resetting the service interval display

We recommend that the display reset is completed by a specialist garage.

We recommend that you do not reset the service interval display yourself. Incorrectly setting the service interval display could cause problems to the vehicle.

Variable service interval
For vehicles with variable service intervals, after resetting the oil change service display in a specialist garage, the values of the new service interval are displayed, which are based on the previous operating conditions of the vehicle.

These values are then continuously matched according to the actual operating conditions of the vehicle.

SmartGate

Introduction to the subject



Fig. 28
QR code with reference to the ŠKODA websites

SmartGate is a system that transmits certain driving data (such as fuel consumption, speed or similar) via Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct.

The ŠKODA applications installed in a supported external device (e.g. phone, tablet) give the option to further transmit the received data.

Some ŠKODA applications can be displayed in the Infotainment display by means of a SmartLinkconnection » *Owner's Manual Infotainment*.

Read in the QR code » Fig. 28 using the respective application on your external device **or** enter the following address in the web browser to open the website with an overview of the available applications, compatible devices and other information about SmartGate.

http://go.skoda.eu/connectivity-smartgate

CAUTION

- To increase the access security to the transmitted vehicle data, once the ŠKODA application has been started, you are requested to change the password/PIN code if the default password/PIN code has not yet been changed » page 49, *Password/PIN code*. It is not possible to start the ŠKODA application without changing it.
- ŠKODA accepts no responsibility for any problems caused by incompatibility or improper functioning of the external devices.

connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi

This type of connection is intended for external devices running Android and iOS operating systems.

Connecting to an Android external device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using uppercase letters» page 49).
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

Connecting to an external iOS device

› Switch on the ignition.
› Switch on Wi-Fi in the external device that is to be connected and search for available Wi-Fi networks (see Owner's Manual for the external device).
› In the menu of the detected networks, select the "SmartGate_..."[1] menu item.
› Enter the password (vehicle identification number using uppercase letters» page 49).

With SmartGate, a maximum of four external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi. In these external devices, up to four ŠKODA applications can be started simultaneously.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection

If the communication device has already had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ Wi-Fi is switched on in the external device that is to be connected to.
✓ The external device that is to be connected to stores the password required for the connection check.

Connection to SmartGate using Wi-Fi direct

This type of connection is intended for external devices running the Android operating system.

Connection set-up

› Switch on the ignition.
› In the external device that is to be connected to, start the SmartGate application.
› In the application, change the connection type to Wi-Fi direct.
› Then follow the instructions in the manual, which is included in the SmartGate application.

The password for the connection to SmartGate _...[1] includes the last six digits of the vehicle identification number » page 49.

With SmartGate, a maximum of two external devices can be connected simultaneously using Wi-Fi direct, with as many launched ŠKODA applications as required.

If you want to connect to SmartGate in a different vehicle, you must make a new connection in the SmartGate application.

Disconnection

The connection can be switched off in one of the following ways.

› Switch off the ignition for longer than 5 seconds (for vehicles with a starter button, switch off the engine and open the driver's door).
› End the connection in the SmartGate application.
› Switch off Wi-Fi in the connected external device.

Automatic connection

If the external device once had a connection with SmartGate, then the connection is automatically restored after the ignition is started.

[1] The last 6 characters of the VIN vehicle identification number of your vehicle are displayed at position ....

SmartGate web interface

SmartGate parameters can be set in the SmartGate web interface.

The following address must be entered in the web browser of the external device that is connected with SmartGate.

HTTP://192.168.123.1

The setting changes are only effective after tapping the buttons "Save" → "Reboot".

Password/PIN code

The password for the **Wi-Fi** connection preset by the factory is the complete vehicle identification number (entered in upper case); the PIN code for the **Wi-Fi direct** connection is the last 6 digits of the vehicle identification number.

After changing the password/PIN, the connection to SmartGate must be re-established on the external device to be connected using the new password or new PIN code.

Changing the password for the Wi-Fi connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 49, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the menu item "WPA / WPA2 key:" enter the new password (8 to 63 alphanumeric characters and special characters, small and capital letters).
› Confirm the password change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

Changing the PIN code for the Wi-Fi Direct connection

› Open the SmartGate web interface » page 49, *SmartGate web interface*.
› In the menu item "WiFi Direct PIN:" Enter the new PIN code (6 digits).
› Confirm the PIN code change by tapping on the "Save" interface.
› Restart SmartGate by tapping on the "Reboot"[1] interface.

i Note

If you have forgotten your password for the connection to SmartGate, SmartGate must be reset to factory settings in a specialised workshop.

[1] If the "Reboot" interface is not displayed, you must manually restore the web browser display.

Unlocking and opening

Unlocking and locking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlock / lock using key and lock 50
Unlocking/locking with the remote control key 50
Unlocking/locking - KESSY 51
Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button 51
SafeLock 52
Individual settings 52
Opening/closing a door 52
Child safety lock 53
Malfunctions 53

The vehicle is equipped with a central locking system which makes it possible to unlock / lock **all** the doors, the fuel filler flap and boot lid simultaneously.

The door unlocking can be adjusted individually » page 52.

The **unlocking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing twice.

If you unlock the vehicle and do not open a door or the boot lid within the next 30 seconds, the vehicle will lock again automatically.

The **locking** of the vehicle is displayed by the turn signal lights flashing once.

If the driver's door has been opened, the vehicle cannot be locked.

If the doors or the boot lid remain open after the vehicle has been locked, the turn signal lights do not flash until they have been closed.

WARNING

- Never leave the key in the vehicle when you exit the vehicle. Unauthorised persons (e.g. children) could lock the car, turn on the ignition or start the engine - There is risk of injury and accidents!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle. These individuals might not be able to exit the vehicle by themselves or to help themselves. Can be fatal at very high or very low temperatures!

CAUTION

- Each key contains electronic components; therefore it must be protected against moisture and severe shocks.
- Keep the key grooves clean. Impurities (textile fibres, dust etc.) have a negative effect on the functionality of the locking cylinder and ignition lock.

Unlock / lock using key and lock

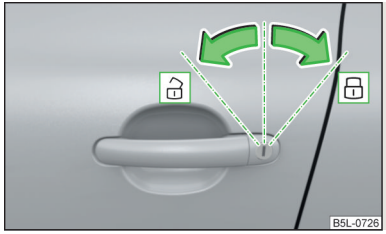


Fig. 29
Left side of the vehicle: Turning the key for unlocking and locking the vehicle

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Unlocking/locking the vehicle with the key » Fig. 29

- Unlocking the vehicle
- Locking the vehicle

CAUTION

If the locking cylinder is provided with a cap, the cap must be removed beforehand to unlock/lock the vehicle.» page 167.

Unlocking/locking with the remote control key



Fig. 30
Key with pop-out key bit

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Description of the key » Fig. 30

- Unlock button
- Lock button
- Button to lock/unlock the boot lid
- **A** Button for folding out/folding in the key bit
- **B** Battery status warning light - if the warning light does not flash when you press a button on the key, the battery is discharged

Unlocking / locking the boot lid

By **pressing lightly** on the button the lid is unlocked.

By **pressing down** on the button the lid is unlocked and unlatched (partly-opened).

If the lid is unlocked or released with the button, then the lid is automatically locked after closing. The period of time after which the flap is locked can be set » page 55.

CAUTION

- The remote control may be affected by signal superimposition from transmitters close to the car.
- The range of the remote control key is about 30 m. The battery must be replaced if the central locking only reacts to the remote control at a distance of less than 3 m away » page 166.

Unlocking/locking - KESSY

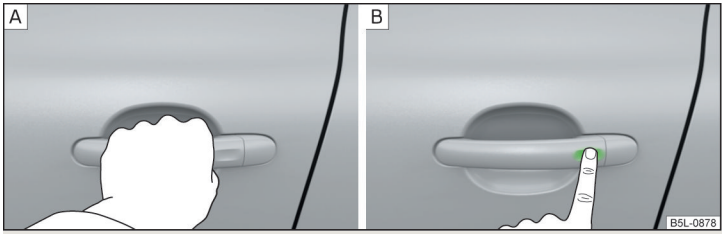


Fig. 31 **Vehicle unlocking / vehicle locking**

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

The KESSY system (Keyless Entry Start Exit System) enables unlocking and locking of the vehicle without actively using the remote control key.

› Grip the door handle to **unlock** » Fig. 31 - A the vehicle.
› Touch the sensor on the door handle with your finger to **lock** » Fig. 31 - B the vehicle.

When unlocking/locking the vehicle, the key must be at a maximum distance of approximately 1.5 m from the front door handle.

Information on locking
On vehicles fitted with automatic gearbox, the selector lever must be moved into the position **P** before unlocking.

The vehicle cannot be locked from the outside if the ignition has not been turned off.

After locking the vehicle, it is not possible to unlock it within the next 2 seconds by touching the door handle. This can be used to check whether the vehicle is locked.

Protection against inadvertently locking the key in the vehicle
If one of the doors is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the passenger compartment, the vehicle is automatically unlocked. After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. If no door is opened within 45 seconds, the vehicle is automatically locked again.

If the boot lid is closed after locking the vehicle and the key with which the vehicle was locked remains in the luggage compartment, the lid is automatically unlatched (partially opened). After automatically unlocking, the turn signal lights will flash four times. The boot lid **remains unlatched** (partially opened); the other doors remain locked.

CAUTION
Some types of gloves can affect the unlocking or locking device via the sensors in the door handle.

Vehicle locking / unlocking with the central locking button



Fig. 32
Central locking button

Read and observe and on page 50 first.

Conditions for the locking/unlocking using the central locking button.
✓ The vehicle is not locked from the outside.
✓ None of the doors are open.

› To **lock**, press the button in the area » Fig. 32.

Locking is displayed in the button by the illumination of the symbol.

› To **unlock**, press the button in the area.

The following applies after locking.
▸ Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.
▸ The doors can be unlocked and opened from the inside by a single pull on the opening lever of the respective door.

WARNING
Doors locked from the inside make it difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

SafeLock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

SafeLock prevents opening the doors from inside as well as window operation. This makes an attempted break-in to the vehicle more difficult.

Activating
SafeLock is activated when the vehicle is locked from the outside.

This function is pointed out by the following message on the display of the instrument cluster after the ignition is switched off.

M **Check SAFELOCK! Log book!**

S **CHECK DEADLOCK**

Activation display
When SafeLock is activated, the warning light in the driver's door flashes for 2 seconds in rapid succession, then starts to flash at longer intervals.

Deactivating
- By locking twice within 2 seconds.
- **or:** by deactivating the interior monitor and the towing protection » page 54.

The warning light in the driver door flashes rapidly for about 2 seconds, then goes out and starts to flash at longer intervals after about 30 seconds.

If the vehicle is locked and the safe securing system is switched off, the door can be opened separately from the inside by a single pull on opening lever.

The Safelock system switches back on when the vehicle is locked.

! WARNING

If the car is locked and the safe securing system activated, no people must remain in the car as it will then not be possible to either unlock a door or open a window from the inside. The locked doors make it more difficult for rescuers to get into the vehicle in an emergency – risk to life!

Individual settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The following central locking functions can be individually set via the MAXI DOT display » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

All doors
The function allows you to unlock all doors, the boot lid and the fuel filler flap.

Single door
The function allows you to unlock only the driver's door and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control. KESSY allows the unlocking of a single door which is in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Doors on a vehicle side
This function enables you to unlock both doors on the driver's side and the fuel filler flap with the radio remote control unit. KESSY allows the unlocking of both doors which are in the vicinity of the key, as well as the fuel filler flap. The other doors and the boot lid are only unlocked once the door handle is unlocked or touched.

Automatic locking/unlocking
This function enables the locking of all doors and the boot lid from a speed of 15 km / h. Opening the doors and the boot lid from the outside is not possible.

The renewed unlocking of the doors and the boot lid is carried out when the ignition key is removed or when the door is opened from inside (depending on the individual setting for the central locking system).

Opening/closing a door

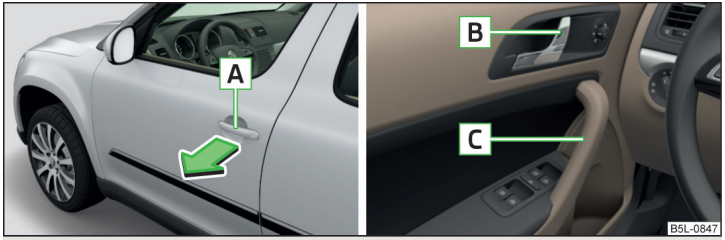


Fig. 33 **Door handle/door opening lever:**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

› To **open from the outside**, unlock the vehicle and pull the door handle A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 33.

› To **open from the inside** pull the door opening lever B and push the door away from you.
› To the **lock from the inside**, grab the handle C and close the door.

WARNING

- The door must be closed properly, otherwise it could open whilst the vehicle is in motion - There is a risk of death!
- Only open and close the door when there is no one in the opening/closing range – There is a risk of injury!
- Never drive with the doors open - it can be fatal!
- An opened door can close automatically if there is a strong wind or the vehicle is on an incline – risk of injury!

Child safety lock



Fig. 34 **Rear door: Switching the child safety system on/off**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

The child safety lock prevents the rear door from being opened from the inside. The door can only be opened from the outside.

› To **turn on** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position » Fig. 34.
› To **turn off** the child safety lock, turn the vehicle key to position .

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 50 first.

Synchronise remote
If the buttons on the remote control key have been depressed several times beyond the effective range of the equipment, or the battery has been replaced in the remote control key and the vehicle cannot be unlocked with the remote control, the key must be synchronised.

› Press any button on the remote control key.
› Unlock the door with the key in the lock cylinder within 1 minute of pressing the button.

Central locking fault
If the warning light in the driver's door initially flashes quickly for around 2 seconds, and then illuminates for 30 seconds without interruption before flashing again slowly, you will need to seek the assistance of a specialist garage.

In the case of a fault with the central locking system, the vehicle doors and the boot lid can be emergency locked or emergency released » page 167.

Failure of the KESSY system
If there is a fault in the KESSY system, the appropriate error message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

Low voltage of the key battery
If the voltage of the key battery is too low, a message appears in the display of the instrument cluster referring to the need to replace the battery. Replace the battery » page 166.

Anti-theft alarm system

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Alarm trigger 54
Interior monitor and towing protection 54

The alarm system triggers audible and visual signals if an attempt is made to break into the vehicle (hereafter referred to as alarm).

The alarm system is activated automatically approximately 30 seconds after the vehicle is locked. This is automatically disabled after release.

CAUTION

Before leaving the vehicle, it must be checked that all of the windows, doors and the sliding/tilting roof are locked in order to ensure the full functionality of the anti-theft alarm system.

Note

The alarm system has its own power source, whose service life is 5 years.

Alarm trigger

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

The alarm is triggered when one of the following unauthorised actions is activated on the vehicle with an activated warning system.

- Opening the bonnet.
- Opening the boot lid.
- Opening the doors.
- Manipulation of the ignition lock.
- Towing the vehicle.
- Movement in the vehicle.
- Sudden and significant voltage drop of the electrical system.
- Uncoupling the trailer.

An alarm is triggered also when the driver's door is unlocked and opened by the lock cylinder.

The alarm is switched off by pressing the button on the key or switching on the ignition.

Interior monitor and towing protection



Fig. 35
Button for interior monitor and towing protection

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

The **interior monitor** detects movements inside the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

The **anti-towing** detects tilts in the locked vehicle and then triggers the alarm.

Both systems should be deactivated if there is a possibility that the alarm will be triggered by movements (e.g. by people or animals) within the vehicle interior or if the vehicle has to be transported (e.g. by train or ship) or towed.

Deactivation

› Switch off the ignition and open the driver's door.
› Press the OFF button on the centre column on the driver side » Fig. 35, the OFF symbol illuminates in the button.
› Lock the vehicle within 30 seconds.

Disabling the two systems, switches off SafeLock.

CAUTION

The opened glasses storage compartment reduces the effectiveness of the interior monitor. To ensure the full functionality of the interior monitor, the glasses storage compartment must always be closed before locking the vehicle.

Luggage compartment lid

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening / closing the boot lid 55
Delayed locking of the boot lid 55

WARNING

- Never drive with the boot lid open or ajar, as otherwise exhaust gases may get into the interior of the vehicle – risk of poisoning!
- Ensure that the lock is properly engaged after closing the lid. Otherwise, the lid might open suddenly while the vehicle is moving, even if the lid was locked – There is a risk of an accident!
- Make sure that when closing the boot lid, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!
- Do not press on the rear window when closing the luggage compartment lid, it could crack – There is a risk of injury!

Opening / closing the boot lid

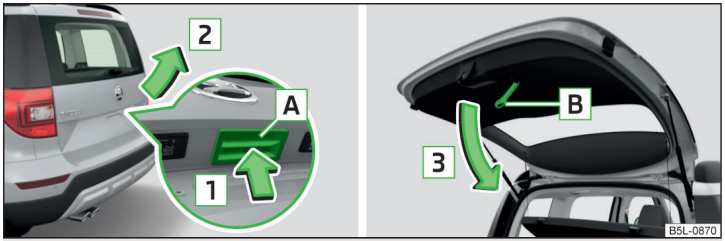


Fig. 36 **Opening / closing tailgate**

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

› To **open** the lid, press-- --» Fig. 36 button A in the direction of arrow 1.
› Raise the lid in the direction of the arrow 2.
› To **close**, grab the mount B and pull in the direction of arrow 3.

Note

Button A » Fig. 36 is disabled when starting off or driving at a speed of over 5 km/h. The button is reactivated when the vehicle has stopped and a door is opened.

Delayed locking of the boot lid

Read and observe ! on page 54 first.

If the boot lid is unlocked with the button on the key, then the boot lid is automatically locked after closing.

The period after which the boot lid is locked automatically can be extended by a specialist garage.

CAUTION

There is a risk of unwanted entry into the vehicle before the boot lid is locked automatically.

Window operation

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Mechanical windows 56
Electric window 56
Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors 56
Force limiter 57
Window convenience operation 57
Operational faults 57

The windows can be operated mechanically by the winder attached to the respective door panel.

The windows can be operated electrically from the following locations; all windows from the driver's seat and also via the buttons for the windows in the passenger door or the rear doors.

WARNING

- Always close the window carefully and in a controlled manner. Otherwise these could cause severe crushing injuries.
- The system is fitted with a force limiter » page 57. If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres. However, the windows should be closed carefully – risk of injury.

CAUTION

- Keep the windows clean (free of ice and similar) to ensure the correct functionality of the electric windows.
- Always close the electric windows before disconnecting the battery.

Note

If the windows are opened, dust as well as other dirt can get into the vehicle and in addition the wind noise is more at certain speeds.

Mechanical windows

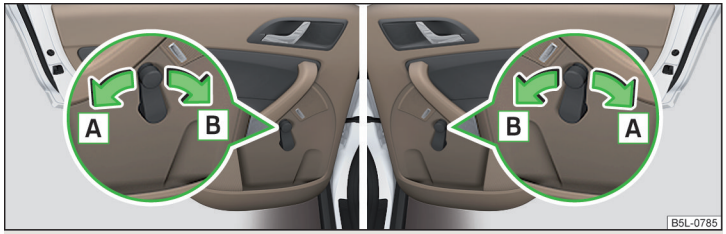


Fig. 37 **Window Operation: Left / Right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

› To **open**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 37.
› To **close**, turn the crank in the direction of arrow B.

Electric window

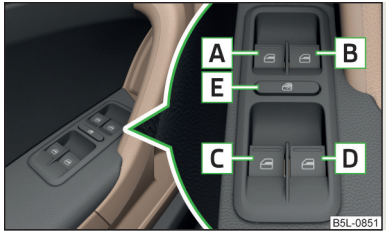


Fig. 38
Window lifter buttons

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

All windows can be operated from the driver's seat. The window in the front passenger door and the windows in the rear doors are operated via the button in each door.

Electric window buttons » Fig. 38

A Left front door
B Right front door
C Left rear door
D Right rear door
E Deactivate/activate the buttons in the rear doors (the deactivation may be advantageous if, for example, children are transported on the rear seats)

› To **open**, lightly press the appropriate button and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **close**, pull gently on the top edge of the corresponding button and hold until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** pull the button briefly to the stop, the window automatically closes fully. Renewed pulling of the button causes the window to stop immediately.
› To **deactivate/activate** the buttons in the rear doors, press the E button. If the buttons in the rear doors are deactivated, the warning light illuminates in the E button.

Note

▪ After switching off the ignition, the windows can still open and close for about 10 minutes.
▪ After the driver or front passenger door is opened, the operation of the window is only possible with the button A » Fig. 38, in which case this is pressed or pulled for approx. 2 seconds.

Opening the windows in the front passenger door and in the rear doors



Fig. 39
Power window button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

There is a button in the front passenger door and in the rear doors for that window.

› To **open**, lightly press the button**underneath**and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.

› **or:** press the button**underneath** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.
› To **open**, lightly press the button **above** and hold it until the window has moved into the desired position.
› **or:** press the button**above** to the stop, the window automatically opens fully. Renewed pressing of the button causes the window to stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

The electric windows are fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If the obstacle prevents the window from being closed during the next 10 seconds, the closing process is interrupted once again and the window goes down by several centimetres.

If you attempt to close the window again within 10 seconds of the window being moved down for the second time, even though the obstacle was not yet been removed, the closing process is only stopped. During this time it is not possible to automatically close the window. The force limiter is still switched on.

The force limiter is only not operational if you attempt to close the window again within the next 10 seconds – **the window will now close with full force!**

If you wait longer than 10 seconds, the force limiter is switched on again.

Window convenience operation

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

The convenience operation for the window offers the option to open/close all the windows at once (or only the window in the driver's door). The setting, activation and deactivation for the window convenience operation is in the MAXI DOT display in the **Window op.** menu item. » page 45.

Opening
› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or**Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.
› **or:**Hold the central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 32 *on page 51*.
› **Or**Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the open position » Fig. 38 *on page 56*.

Closing
› Press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or**Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.
› **Or:**Hold the central locking button in the area of the symbol » Fig. 32 *on page 51* .
› **Or**Switch off the ignition, open the driver's door and hold the key A until it stops in the closed position » Fig. 38 *on page 56*.
› In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the door handle of the front door » Fig. 31 *on page 51*.

The convenience operation will only function correctly if all the windows automatically open/close properly.

Convenience opening or closing the window using the key in the driver's door locking cylinder is only possible within 45 seconds of locking the vehicle.

The movement of the window is stopped immediately when the respective button is released.

Operational faults

Read and observe ! and ! on page 55 first.

Repeatedly opening and closing the window can cause the window mechanism to overheat and become temporarily blocked. You will be able to operate the window again as soon as the operating mechanism has cooled down.

The electric windows are deactivated after the vehicle battery has been disconnected. After connecting the vehicle battery, the system is **activated** as follows.

Window in the driver's door
› Switch on the ignition.
› Pull the top edge of the button and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button and hold for 1 second.

Windows in the other doors
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the respective key **above** and close the window.
› Release the button.
› Pull up the respective button**above** and hold for 1 second.

Panorama sliding/tilting roof

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 58
Force limiter 58
Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof 59
Activate operation of the tilt / slide sunroof 59
Sunshade with electric operation 59
Activating operation of the sunshade 59

The panoramic tilt / slide sunroof (hereinafter referred to as tilt / slide sunroof) can only be operated when the ignition is turned on and when the outdoor temperature is above -20 °C.

The sliding/tilting roof can still be operated for approx. 10 minutes after switching the ignition off. After opening the driver or front passenger door, it is no longer possible to operate the sliding/tilting roof.

WARNING

When operating the tilt/slide sunroof and the sunshade, proceed with caution to avoid causing crushing injuries – There is a risk of injury!

CAUTION

- During the winter it may be necessary to remove any ice and snow in the vicinity of the sliding/tilting roof before opening it to prevent any damage to the opening mechanism.
- Always close the sliding/tilting roof before disconnecting the battery.

Operation

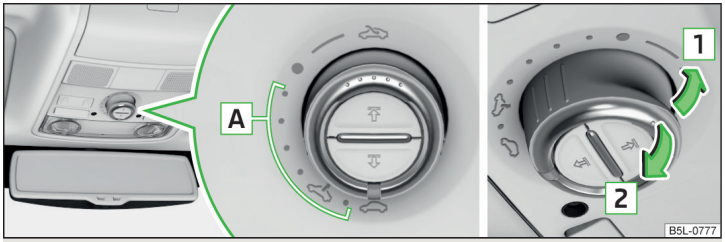


Fig. 40 **Operation of the sliding/tilting roof**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

Operation of the tilt / slide sunroof » Fig. 40

- Open fully
- Open to the low-noise position

A Open partially

- Close completely

1 Opening (switch in position)

2 Closing (switch in position)

After turning the switch one stop to position (spring-tensioned position), the tilt / slide sunroof stops in the position in which the intensity of the wind noise is low. After turning the switch further to position , the tilt / slide sunroof opens up to the stop.

Force limiter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 58 first.

The sliding/tilting roof is fitted with a force limiter.

If there is an obstacle, the closing process is stopped and the glass pane retracts by several centimetres.

WARNING

If the tilt / slide sunroof is closed, by pulling on the recess of the switch in the direction of arrow 2, » Fig. 40 *on page 58* and the closing process is hindered by an obstacle, then at the third attempt at closing, the force limitation will cease to function (if less than 5 s passes between the individual attempts to close). The tilt / slide sunroof closes with full force - There is a risk of injury.

Convenience operation of sliding / tilting roof

Read and observe and on page 58 first.

The convenience operation makes it possible to open or close the sliding/tilting roof using the key or the KESSY system via the sensor in the door handle of the front door.

› To **open out**, press and hold the button on the key.
› **Or**Hold the key in the unlock position in the driver's door lock.
› To **close**, press and hold the button on the key. In the KESSY system, hold your finger on the sensor on the outside of the front door handle » Fig. 31 *on page 51*.
› **Or**Hold the key in the lock position in the driver's door lock.

By interrupting the locking process, the closing operation is interrupted.

Activate operation of the tilt / slide sunroof

Read and observe and on page 58 first.

If the tilt / slide sunroof stops working (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation must be reactivated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 40 *on page 58*.
› Press the switch on the recess E down and pull forwards.

The tilt / slide sunroof opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the lever.

Sunshade with electric operation

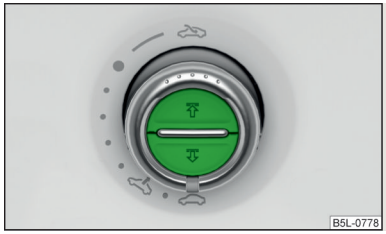


Fig. 41
Button for operating the sunshade

Read and observe and on page 58 first.

Operation of the sunblind » Fig. 41

Open - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)
Close - by pressing (press again - sunshade stops moving)

The sunshade can also be operated by pressing and holding the appropriate button (starts movement of the sunshade) and releasing it when the sunshade reaches the desired position.

Activating operation of the sunshade

Read and observe and on page 58 first.

If the operation of sunshade is deactivated (e.g. after disconnecting and connecting the battery), then the operation will have to be activated.

› Turn on the ignition and set the switch to position » Fig. 41 *on page 59*.
› Press the button and hold down.

The sunshade opens and closes again after around 10 seconds.

› Release the button.

Lights and visibility

Lights

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operating the lights 60
Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT) 61
Turn signal and main beam 61
Automatic driving light control 62
Xenon headlight 62
Fog lights/rear fog light 62
Fog lights with the CORNER function 63
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Hazard warning light system 63
Parking lights 63
Driving abroad 64

Unless otherwise stated, the lights only work when the ignition is switched on.

The layout of the controls on right-hand drive vehicles differs partially from that shown in this layout» Fig. 42 *on page 60*.

WARNING

The automatic driving lamp control **AUTO** only operates as a support and does not release the driver from his responsibility to check the lights and, if necessary, to switch on the light depending on the prevailing light conditions.

Note

The headlights may mist up temporarily. When the light is on, the light-emitting surface demists after a short time.

Operating the lights

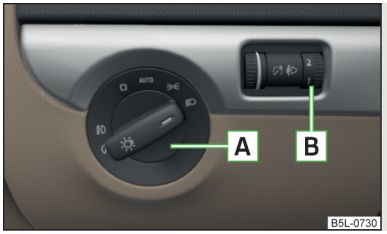


Fig. 42
Light switch and control dial for the headlight beam range regulation

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

To **switch on/off** the lights, turn the A » Fig. 42 switch to one of the following positions (equipment-dependent).

0 Switching off lights (except daytime running lights)

AUTO Switching lights on/off automatically » page 62

Switching on the parking lights or parking lights on both sides » page 63

Switching on the low beam

To **adjust the headlight range control**, turn dial B » Fig. 42 in line with the vehicle load » !.

– Front seats occupied, boot empty

1 All seats occupied, boot empty

2 All seats occupied, boot loaded

3 Driver seat occupied, boot loaded

The **Xenon headlights** feature no manual headlight range control. After switching on the ignition, adjust these automatically to the load and driving condition of the vehicle.

WARNING

Always adjust the headlight beam to meet the following conditions - otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

- The vehicle does not dazzle other road users, especially oncoming vehicles.
- The beam range is sufficient for safe driving.

Note

- If, with a low beam, the ignition is turned off, then the dipped beam will automatically switch off [1] and the parking lights illuminate. The parking lights are switched off when the ignition key is removed (for vehicles with the KESSY system, after opening the driver's door).
- If there is a fault in the light switch, the low beam comes on automatically.

Daylight running lights (DAY LIGHT)

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The daytime running light (hereinafter referred to as "function") lights the front and rear vehicle area (only valid for some countries).

The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met.

✓ The light switch is in the position **0** or **AUTO**.
✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The function is activated.

Function for vehicles with MAXI DOT display disable / enable
The function menu item **Daytime driving light** can be deactivated / activated » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

Disable function for vehicles with segment display
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push down and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until you hear a signal (about 3 s).

Enable function for vehicles with segment display
› Pull the indicator / main beam lever towards the steering wheel, push up and hold in this position.
› Switch on the ignition and hold the lever in the above position until you hear a signal (about 3 s).

! WARNING
Always switch on the low beam when visibility is poor.

Turn signal and main beam

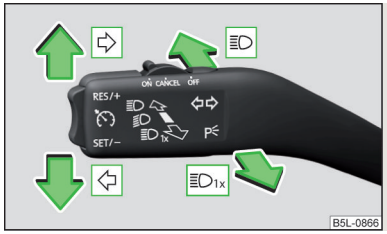


Fig. 43
Operating lever: Turn signal and main beam operation

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Control stalk positions » Fig. 43
⇨ Switch on right turn signal
⇦ Switch on left turn signal
≡D Switch on main beam (spring-tensioned position)
≡D1x Switching off main beam / switching on headlamp flasher (spring-loaded position)

The **main beam** can only be switched on when the low beam lights are on.

The **headlight flasher** can be operated even if the ignition is switched off.

The **turn signal** switches off automatically, depending on the steering angle after completing the turn.

Comfort signalling
When the operating lever is pressed lightly up or down, the indicator in question flashes three times.

Comfort signalling can be activated / deactivated via the Maxi DOT display in the **Comfort Signalling** » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings** menu item.

! WARNING
Only turn on the main beam or the headlight flasher if other road users will not be dazzled.

[1] Does not apply to the position **AUTO**, as long as the conditions are met for the COMING HOME function » page 63.

Automatic driving light control



Fig. 44
Light switch: AUTO position

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The light switch is in position **AUTO** » Fig. 44 then depending on the equipment the automatic switch on / off the lights corresponding to the light or weather conditions (rain) takes place.

Automatic driving light control during rain
The daytime running lights are switched on automatically if the following conditions are met:

✓ The light switch is in the position **AUTO**.
✓ The windscreen wipers are on for more than 15 s.

The light turns off automatically about 4 minutes after turning off the wipers.

! CAUTION
Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system function can be disrupted.

Xenon headlight

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The Xenon headlights (hereinafter referred to as just system) use the driving data to automatically ensure the for the best possible light cone in front of the vehicle.

The system will automatically operate in the following modes: urban, extra-urban, motorway, rain, adjusting the lighting direction of the headlights for road illumination around bends.

The system works as long as the light switch is in position **AUTO**.

! WARNING
If there is a system malfunction the headlights are automatically lowered to the emergency position, which prevents a possible dazzling of oncoming traffic. This reduces the cone of light in front of the vehicle. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Fog lights/rear fog light



Fig. 45
Light switch: turn on fog lights / rear fog light switch

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

Switching on the fog lights / rear fog lights is possible if the following conditions apply.

✓ The light switch is in the position or » Fig. 45.

› To **switch on** the **fog lights**, pull the light switch in position 1; the warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.
› To **switch on** the **rear fog light**, pull the light switch to position 2, the indicator light will light up in the instrument cluster.

If the vehicle is not fitted with **fog lights**, the **rear fog light** is switched on by pulling out the light switch to the only possible setting.

The fog lights/rear fog light are **switched off** in the reverse order.

i Note
While driving with an accessory connected to the trailer socket (e.g. trailer, bike carrier) only the equipment is illuminated by the fog light. The towing device must be installed at the factory or from the ŠKODA original accessories.

Fog lights with the CORNER function

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The CORNER function automatically switches on the fog lights on the respective side of the vehicle (e.g. when cornering), if the following conditions are fulfilled.

- ✓ The turn signal is switched on or the front wheels are turned sharply [1].
- ✓ The vehicle speed is below 40 km/h.
- ✓ The low beam is switched on.
- ✓ The fog lights are not switched on.

The two fog lights are switched on when you shift into the reverse gear.

COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The function COMING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after switching off the ignition and opening the driver's door.

The function LEAVING HOME ensures that the vehicle's environment is illuminated after unlocking the vehicle with the radio remote control unit.

The function switches the light on only if there is poorer visibility and the light switch is in the position **AUTO**.

The functions and settings of the illumination time can be via the MAXI DOT display in the menu items **Coming Home** or **Leaving Home activated / deactivated and set up**» page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

! CAUTION

- Poorer visibility is evaluated by a sensor mounted below the windscreen in the holder of the rear-view mirror. Do not cover the sensor - the system function can be disrupted.
- If this option is always enabled, then the battery is heavily loaded.

[1] If the two switch-on variants are conflicting (e.g. if the front wheels are turned to the left and the right turn signal light is switched on), the turn signal light has the higher priority.

Hazard warning light system



Fig. 46
Button for hazard warning light system

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

› To **switch on/off**, press the ⚠ button» Fig. 46.

When switched on, the turn signal lights and the warning light ⚠ buttons all flash at the same time as the warning lights ⬅ ➡ in the instrument cluster.

The hazard warning light system can also be operated if the ignition is switched off.

If one of the airbags is deployed, the hazard warning light system will switch on automatically.

When the hazard warning system is on and the indicator light is switched on (e.g. when turning), the hazard warning lights are switched off temporarily and only the turn signal flashes on the relevant side of the vehicle.

Parking lights

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

The side light is provided for lighting of the parked vehicle.

Switching on the side light P≤ on one side

› Switch off the ignition.
› Press the control lever all the way into position ⇨ or ⇦ until it stops » Fig. 43 *on page 61*.

The parking light is turned on on the relevant side of the vehicle. ▸

Switching on the side light on both sides
› Switch on the ignition and turn the light switch to position » page 60, the parking lights are turned on.
› Switch off the ignition and lock the car.

After pulling out the ignition key and opening the driver's door, an audible warning sounds. After a few seconds or after closing the driver's door, the audible warning is turned off.

CAUTION
- Turning on the parking light means the battery is heavily loaded.
- The parking lights may switch off automatically due to a low battery charge.

If the two-sided parking lights are switched on when the ignition is off, the parking lights will not switch on automatically!

Driving abroad

Read and observe ! on page 60 first.

When driving in countries with opposing traffic system (traffic on the left/right), your headlights may dazzle oncoming traffic. Therefore, it is necessary to have the headlights adapted by a specialist garage.

You can adjust the settings of the Xenon headlights for a reverse traffic system in the menu of the MAXI DOT display under the **Travel mode**menu item» page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**. In this mode, no automatic beam adjustment is made ahead of the vehicle. When switching on the ignition the warning light flashes for 10 seconds.

Interior lighting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Front interior light 64
Interior lighting, rear 65

The inner lighting also works if the ignition is switched off. With the ignition switched off, the lights will automatically switch off after approximately after 10 minutes.

Front interior light



Fig. 47 **Front interior lights: Version 1/version 2**

Positions of the toggle switch A » Fig. 47
- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position)
- **0** Switching off

There is no icon available for the centre position (automatic operation) in Version 2.

Switch on / off (by pressing the relevant switch B) » Fig. 47
- Reading lamp left
- Reading lamp right

Automatic operation - position
The system is **turned on** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is unlocked.
- One of the doors or the luggage compartment lid is being opened.
- The ignition key is removed.

The system is **turned off** when any of the following is present.
- The vehicle is locked.
- The ignition is switched on.
- About 30 seconds after all the doors have been closed.

Interior lighting, rear

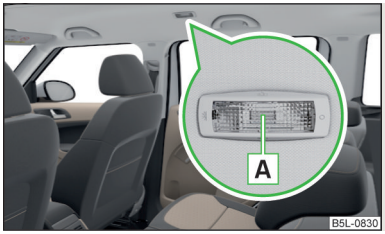


Fig. 48
Interior lights at the rear

Operation (by moving the lens A) » Fig. 48

- Switching on
- Automatic operation (centre position) [1]
- Switching off

Visibility

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen and rear window heating ____ 65
Front sun visors ____ 66

WARNING

No objects should be attached to the sun visor that could restrict the view or endanger the vehicle occupants during sudden braking or in a collision.

Windscreen and rear window heating

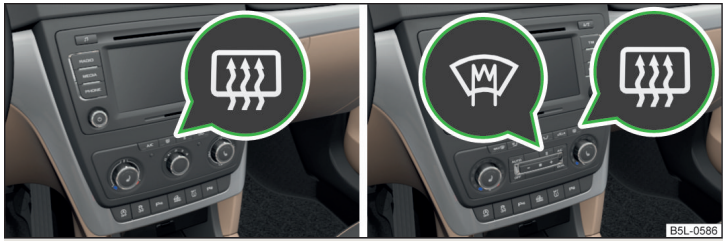


Fig. 49 **Button for the rear and front window heating: manual air conditioning / Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

The heating for quick defrosting and ventilation of the front /and rear window.

The heating only works when the engine is running.

Buttons for the heating (depending on vehicle equipment) » Fig. 49

- Switching the rear window heater on/off
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off

When the heater is switched on, a lamp lights up inside the button.

The heating automatically switches off after 10 minutes.

Note

- If the on-board voltage decreases, the heating switches off automatically » page 149, *Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection*.
- If the light is flashing inside the button, the heater will not function due to low battery.
- The location of the button can be different depending on the equipment fitted.

[1] In this position, the same rules apply to the rear interior light as for the front interior light » page 64, *Front interior light*.

Front sun visors

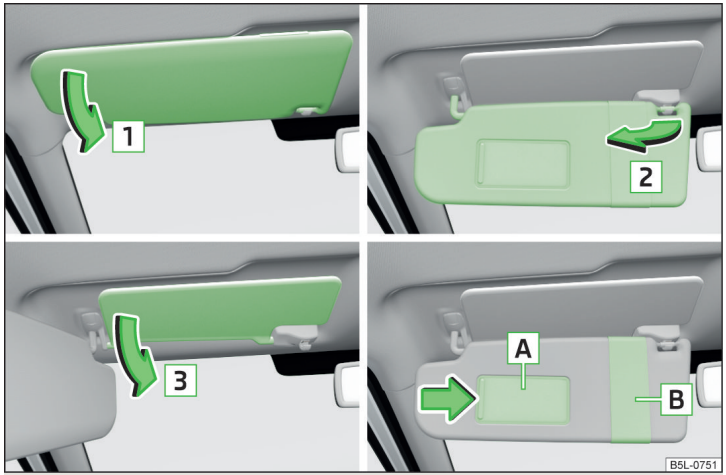


Fig. 50 **Fold down the cover / fold up cover / fold down secondary visor / make-up mirror and tape**

Read and observe ! on page 65 first.

Operation and description of the sun visor » Fig. 50

1 Swivel cover towards the windscreen
2 Swivel cover towards the door
3 Swivel the assist cover towards the windscreen
A Make-up mirror with cover (the cover can be pushed in the direction of the arrow)
B Tape for storage of small light objects

Windscreen wipers and washers

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Windscreen wipers and washers 67
Rear windscreen wipers and washers 67
Headlight cleaning system 68

The windscreen wipers and the wash system only operate if the ignition is switched on and the bonnet and boot are closed[1].

! WARNING

Do not use the windscreen washer system at low temperatures, without heating the windscreen beforehand. The window washer fluid could otherwise freeze on the windscreen and restrict the view to the front.

! CAUTION

- If the windscreen wipers are in rest position, they cannot be folded out from the windscreen. The wipers must be set to the service position to raise them off the windscreen » page 168.
- In cold temperatures and during the winter, check before switching on the ignition that the wiper blades are not frozen to the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers are switched on when the blades are frozen to the windscreen, this may damage both the blades and windscreen wiper motor!
- Carefully separate frozen windscreen wiper blades from the windscreen and free from snow and ice.
- Handle the windscreen wipers with care - there is a risk of damage to the windscreen by the windscreen wiper arms.
- Do not switch on the ignition when the wiper arm is raised from the windscreen - there is a risk of damage to the bonnet by the wiper arms.
- If there is an obstacle on the windscreen, the wipers will try to push away the obstacle five times. The wipers then stop to prevent themselves from being damaged. Only switch the wipers on again after the obstacle has been removed.

[1] On vehicles which do not have a contact switch for the bonnet, the windshield wiper and wash system operates also when the bonnet is opened.

Note

- Each time the ignition switches off for the third time, the position of the windscreen wipers changes. This counteracts an early fatigue of the wiper rubbers.
- The windscreen washer nozzles for the windscreen are heated when the engine is running and the outside temperature is less than +10 °C.

Windscreen wipers and washers

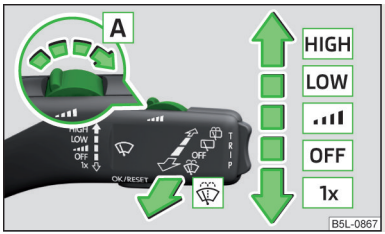


Fig. 51
Operating the windscreen wipers and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 51

OFF Wipers and washers off

Depending on equipment fitted:
- Intermittent wiping
- Automatic windscreen wiping in the rain

A Setting of windscreen wiper interval for the position - by setting the switch in the direction of the arrow, the windscreen wipers will wipe more often

LOW Slow-speed wiping

HIGH High-speed wiping

1x Single wipe of the windscreen (spring-loaded position)

Spraying and wiping the windscreen (sprung position)

Spraying and wiping the window
After releasing the operating lever, the wipers will make from 3 to 4 wiper strokes.

At a speed of more than 2 km/h, the wiper wipes once again 5 seconds after the last wiper stroke in order to wipe the last drops from the windscreen. This function can be activated/deactivated by a specialist garage.

WARNING

Automatic wiping during rain is only a support. The driver is not released from the responsibility to set the function of the windscreen wipers manually depending on the visibility conditions.

Note

If the wiping is carried out without interruption, the wiping speed varies depending on the vehicle speed.

Rear windscreen wipers and washers

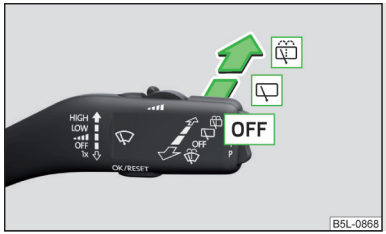


Fig. 52
Operation of the rear wiper and washer system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The lever can be moved to the following positions » Fig. 52

OFF Wipers and washers off

Rear screen wiping

Spraying and wiping the disc (spring-loaded position) - after releasing the operating lever the wipers continue for another 2 to 3 strokes.

Automatic rear wiper
If the windscreen wiping is performed without interruption, then the automatic regular intermittent wiping of the rear window takes place.

This mode can be enabled or disabled via the Maxi DOT display in the **Rear wiper**» page 45, *Menu item* **Settings** menu option.

Note

The rear window is wiped once automatically if the windscreen wipers are on when reverse gear is selected.

Headlight cleaning system

Read and observe ! and ! on page 66 first.

The headlights are cleaned with every first and after every fifth spraying of the windscreen under the following conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The low beam is switched on.
✓ The outside temperature is about -12° C to +39° C.

To ensure the correct functioning of the system, even in winter, this needs to be regularly cleared of snow and ice (e.g. using the de-icing spray).

Rear view mirror

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Interior mirror dimming 68
Mirrors 69

! WARNING

Exterior mirrors increase the field of view, however, they make objects appear smaller and further away. Therefore, use the interior mirror whenever possible, for assessing the distances to the vehicles following behind.

! WARNING

- The mirrors with automatic dimming contain electrolyte fluid which may leak if the mirror glass is broken - this can irritate skin, eyes and the respiratory system.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

Interior mirror dimming

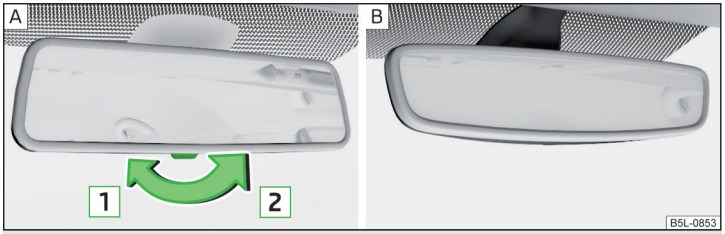


Fig. 53 **Interior mirror: manual dimming/auto-darkening**

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

Mirrors with manual dimming » Fig. 53 - A

1 Basic mirror position (not darkened)
2 Mirror blackout

Mirror with automatic dimming

The mirror dimming » Fig. 53 - B is automatically controlled after the engine start.

When the interior lights are switched on or the reverse gear is engaged, the mirror moves back into the basic position (not dimmed).

! WARNING

- Attach external devices (e.g. navigation system) not in the vicinity of the **mirror with automatic dimming**. The illuminated display of an external device can affect the function of the rear-view mirror -There is a risk of an accident.
- Automatic mirror dimming only operates correctly if the light striking the sensor is not affected by other objects. The sensors are located on the front and back of the mirror.

Mirrors

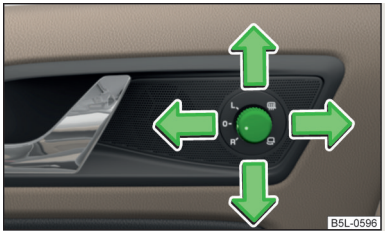


Fig. 54
Exterior mirror operation

Read and observe ! on page 68 first.

The exterior mirrors can (depending on vehicle equipment) have a manual or electric fold-in function, automatic dimming and memory function.

The rotary knob can be moved into the following positions (depending on vehicle equipment)

L Adjust the left-hand exterior mirror
0 Switch off mirror control
R Adjust the right-hand exterior mirror
Exterior mirror heater (only operates when the engine is running)
Folding in the mirrors electrically (to fold back, move the rotary knob to another position) » !

Setting the mirror area

› Move the rotary knob in the direction of arrows » Fig. 54.

If the mirror setting fails at any time, the mirrors can be adjusted manually by pressing on the edge of the mirror area.

Setting the mirror surfaces synchronously

This function allows the simultaneous adjustment of the two mirror areas. This mode can be enabled or disabled via the Maxi DOT display in the **Adjust mirrors**» page 45, *Menu item* **Settings** menu item.

› Turn the knob for the mirror control to the position for the driver mirror adjustment.
› Adjust the mirror areas to the desired position.

Manual folding mirrors

The mirror can be manually folded in towards the side window. To put it back into its original position, it should be folded back from the side window until it audibly clicks into place.

Folding-in both of the exterior mirrors using the remote control key

› Close all windows and hold the button on the remote control key.

The exterior mirror is folded back into the driving position when the ignition is switched on.

Mirror with automatic dimming

The exterior mirror dimming is controlled together with the automatic rear-view mirror dimming » page 68.

Memory function for mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

It is possible to save the current setting of the exterior mirror when saving the driver's seat position with » page 71, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat*or » page 72, *Memory function of the remote control key*.

Tilting the mirror area of the front passenger mirror (vehicles with electrically adjustable driver's seat)

The front passenger mirror area can be tilted to the stored position to improve the view to the curb when reversing.

Operating conditions.

✓ The function is activated via the MAXI DOT display in the menu item **Mirror down** » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.
✓ The setting of the mirror area has been previously stored » page 71, *Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat* or. » page 72, *Memory function of the remote control key*.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.
✓ The knob for the mirror control is in the position for the passenger mirror adjustment.

The mirror area returns to its initial position after the rotary knob is set to another position or if the speed is greater than 15 km/h.

! WARNING

Do not touch the exterior mirror surfaces, if the exterior mirror heating is switched on - hazard of burning.

CAUTION

- Never manually fold in/out the electrically folding exterior mirrors - there is a risk of damage to the mirror!
- When the mirror is swung by external influences (due to impact during manoeuvring, for example), then first **fold-in** the mirror by turning the knob and wait for a loud clapping noise.

Seats and head restraints

Front seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual adjustment 70
Electrical adjustment 71
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 71
Memory function of the remote control key 72
Folding front passenger seat 72
Armrest setting 73

WARNING

- Only adjust the driver's seat when the vehicle is stationary – otherwise there is a risk of accident!
- Caution when adjusting the seat! You may suffer injuries or bruises as a result of adjusting the seat without paying proper attention.

Manual adjustment

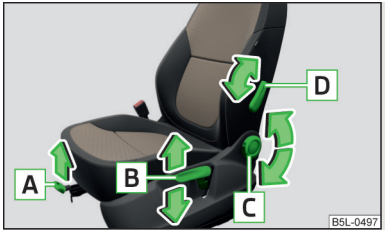


Fig. 55
Control elements on the seat

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pulled, pressed or turned in the direction of the arrows » Fig. 55.

A Adjusting the seat in the longitudinal direction (after releasing the control lever, locking must be audible)

B Adjusting the seat height

C Adjusting the tilt of the backrest (do not lean on the backrest when adjusting)
D Setting the extent of the curvature of the lumbar support

Note
After a certain time, play can develop within the adjustment mechanism of the backrest angle.

Electrical adjustment

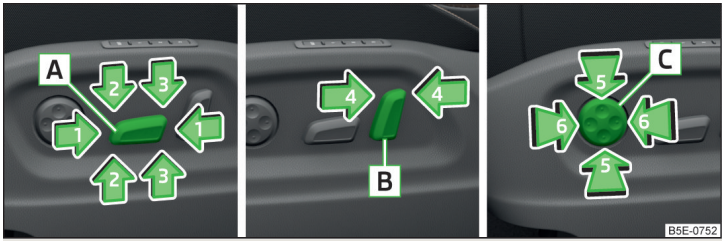


Fig. 56 **Control elements on the seat**

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The seats can be adjusted by the respective operating element being pressed in the direction of area of the arrow » Fig. 56.

A seat adjustment
- **1** - Move in the longitudinal direction
- **2** - Change in inclination
- **3** - Change in height

B Adjusting the seat backrest
- **4** - Change in inclination

C Adjusting lumbar support
- **5** - Change curvature
- **6** - The degree of curvature change

! WARNING
The electric front seat adjustment is functional even with the ignition off. Therefore, when leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of injury!

Note
If the inclination angle of the seat backrest relative to the seat surface is greater than 102 °, then it is not possible for safety reasons to save this setting in the memory of the electrically adjustable seats or the remote control key.

Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat

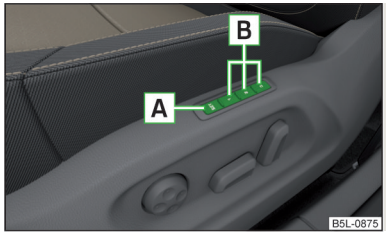


Fig. 57
SET button and memory buttons

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Among the memory buttons B on the driver's seat, a setting for the driver´s seat and exterior mirror position can be saved » Fig. 57.

Storing driver's seat and exterior mirror settings for the forwards drive
› Switch on the ignition, adjust the seat and the exterior mirrors.
› Hold down the SET A » Fig. 57 button and within 10 seconds press the desired memory button B at the same time. Storing is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the **Mirror down** menu item, the lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side must be enabled for reversing » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

› Turn on the ignition and press the desired memory button B » Fig. 57.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 69.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The set position of the exterior mirror is stored.

Retrieving the saved setting
The retrieval is possible when turned the ignition is switched on and the vehicle speed is less than 5 km/h or when the ignition key is inserted in the ignition lock.

› Hold the desired **memory button** B » Fig. 57 .

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Note
Every time you save new seat and exterior mirror settings for driving forwards, you must also save the front passenger mirror setting for reversing again.

Memory function of the remote control key

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

Every time the vehicle is locked, the driver´s seat and exterior mirror settings are saved and assigned to the key with which the vehicle was locked.

After the following unlocking of the vehicle with the same key, the driver´s seat and exterior mirrors that are saved to this key will be adopted.

Activating the function
› Unlock the vehicle with the corresponding remote control key and open the driver door.
› Press and hold any memory button B » Fig. 57 *on page 71*.
› After the seat has assumed the position stored under this button, at the same time press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds. Activation is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Storing front passenger´s exterior mirror settings for reversing
Above the MAXI DOT display in the **Mirror down** menu item, the lowering function for the mirror on the passenger side must be enabled for reversing » page 45, *Menu item* **Settings**.

› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key and switch on the ignition.
› Turn the rotary knob for the exterior mirror control to the position for the front passenger mirror area » page 69.
› Engage reverse gear.
› Adjust the front passenger's mirror to the desired position.
› Disengage reverse gear. The adjusted position of the exterior mirror is stored in the remote control key memory.

Deactivating the function
› Unlock the vehicle with the remote control key.
› Press and hold down the SET A » Fig. 57 *on page 71* button. At the same time, press the button on the remote control key within 10 seconds. Deactivation is confirmed by an acoustic signal.

Stopping the ongoing adjustment
› Press any button on the driver's seat or the button on the remote control key.

Folding front passenger seat

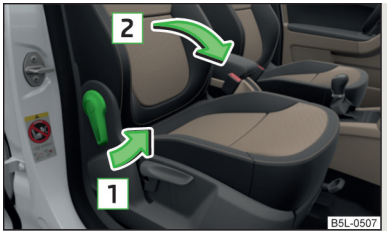


Fig. 58
Folding the front passenger seat forward

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

The front passenger seat can, depending on specification, be folded forward into a horizontal position.

› To **fold** the seat down, pull the lever in the direction of arrow 1 and fold down the seat back in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 58. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› To **fold back**, pull the lever in the direction of arrow 1 pull and fold back the seat back in the direction of arrow 2. The locking mechanism must audibly snap into place.
› Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.

WARNING
- If the seat backrest is folded down, only the seat behind the driver´s seat can be used to transport passengers.
- The front passenger airbag should be switched off when transporting objects on the seat which was folded forwards » page 21, *Deactivating the front passenger airbag*.

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not adjust the seat back while driving - There is a risk of injury and accidents!
- When moving the seat backrest, keep limbs out of the area between the seat and seat backrest – risk of injury!
- Never transport the following items on the seat backrest when folded forwards.
  - Objects that could restrict the driver's view.
  - Objects which make it impossible for the driver to control the vehicle (e.g. if they roll under the pedals, or protrude into the driver's zone).
  - Objects which could lead to injury to passengers (e.g. if accelerating sharply, braking or changing direction).

Armrest setting

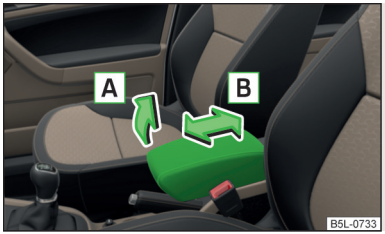


Fig. 59
Adjust armrest

Read and observe ! on page 70 first.

› To **adjust the height**, lift the armrest in the direction of the arrow A into one of the six locking positions » Fig. 59.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A until the stop and then fold down again.
› To **longitudinally adjust** move the armrest in the direction of arrow B to the desired position.

Rear seats

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Adjusting seats in forward/back direction ____ 73
Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest ____ 73
Folding the seat backrest forwards and folding the seat fully forwards ____ 74
Unlock and removing the seat ____ 74
Adjusting seats in crosswise direction ____ 75
Folding back seats ____ 75

Adjusting seats in forward/back direction

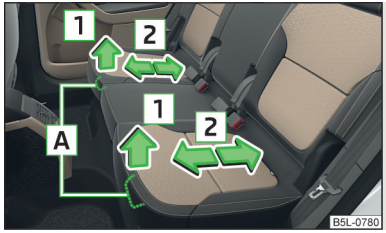


Fig. 60
Adjusting seats in forward/back direction

› Pull lever A in the direction of arrow 1 and move the seat to the desired position in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 60.

Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest



Fig. 61 **Adjusting the seat backrest**

› Pull lever A lever on the bottom in the direction of the arrow 1 pull and set the desired tilt of the seat back in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 61.
› Check for yourself that the seat backrest is engaged by pulling on it.

Folding the seat backrest forwards and folding the seat fully forwards



Fig. 62 **Safety position of seat belt / folding the seat completely forward**



Fig. 63
Lock forward folded seats

Folding the seat backrest forwards

› Insert the belt buckle A of the seat belt into the opening in the side panel» Fig. 62.
› Remove the head restraint from the rear middle seat.
› Push the outer rear seats towards the rear as far as they will go» Fig. 60 *on page 73*.
› Fold the outer rear seat backrests and the center seat to the stop on the seat surface » Fig. 61 *on page 73*.
› Then pull the lever A » Fig. 61 *on page 73* again and push the seat back down until it clicks into place in a lower position.

Folding seats fully forwards and locking them

› If the outer rear seat is fully folded forward, push it towards the rear as far as it can go.
› Pull the lever B » Fig. 62 in the direction of the arrow 1 and push the seat completely forward in the direction of arrow 2.
› Secure the folded forward seat with the aid of the fixing belt B to a guide rod of the head restraint in the front seat » Fig. 63.

WARNING

- The seat backs in occupied rear seats must be properly engaged.
- When transporting objects in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding the backrest forward, ensure the safety of the passengers transported on the other rear seats.
- The seat backrests must be securely locked in position so that no objects in the luggage compartment can slide into the passenger compartment on sudden braking – There is a risk of injury.

CAUTION

When moving the seat backrest, the seat belts should not be trapped - there is a risk of damage to the seat belts.

CAUTION

- Before folding the rear middle seat forward, make sure that the storage compartment, the ashtray and the cup holder in the rear part of the centre console are closed - risk of damage.
- Only keep the seats in the folded forward position for as long as necessary to transport cargo - there is a risk of damaging the front seat backrests. The seats must be folded back once the cargo has been transported.
- If the outer seat is not in the rear end position when folding forward, damage can occur to the locking bolts when unlocking the seat.

Unlock and removing the seat

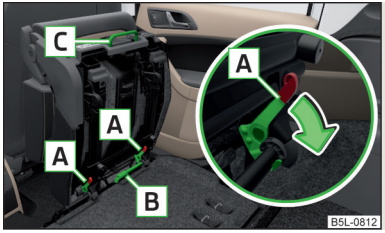


Fig. 64
Unlocking the folded forward seat and carrying handles on the seat surface

› Unlock the folded seat by pressing seat locks» Fig. 62 *on page 74* A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 64.
› Remove the seat on the carrying handle B or C.

Note

The outer seats are not mutually interchangeable. In the rear area the left seat is marked with the letter **L** and the right seat with the letter **R**.

Adjusting seats in crosswise direction

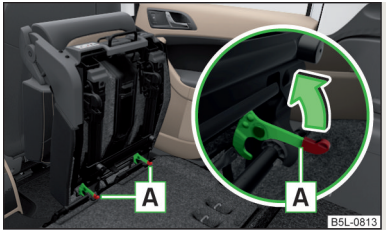


Fig. 65
Locking seats

› Remove the middle seat» Fig. 64 *on page 74*.
› Fold the outer seat forwards and unlock » Fig. 64 *on page 74*.
› Move outer seat on the guide towards the middle of the vehicle up to the stop.
› Lock the folded forward seat by pressing the seat locks A in the direction of arrow » Fig. 65.

Folding back into the starting position is accomplished in the reverse order.

Folding back seats

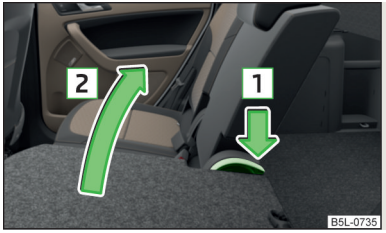


Fig. 66
Folding the seat backrest back into position

› If the seat has been removed, first position it on the guide and lock it in place using seat locking A » Fig. 65 *on page 75* . Pull the seat upwards to ensure that the seat is locked correctly.
› Fold the seat in the horizontal position until it audibly click in place. Check that the seat can no longer be lifted by pulling it up.
› Press the lever in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 66 and fold back the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 2. Check this by pulling on the seat backrest.

Headrests

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Setting the height 75
Removing/installing 76

Note

The middle rear head restraint is only adjustable in two positions.

Setting the height

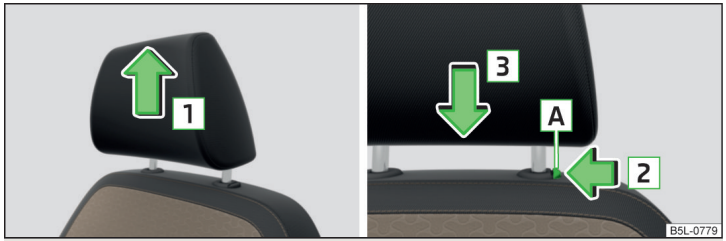


Fig. 67 **Setting the height of the headrest**

› Grasp the restraint and move **upwards** in the direction of 1 » Fig. 67.
› To move the headrest **down**, press the securing button A in the direction of arrow 2 and hold it down while pressing the headrest in the direction of arrow 3.

Removing/installing



Fig. 68 **Removing/installing the headrest**

› To **remove** the headrest, pull it out of the seat backrest up to the latch.
› Press locking button A in the direction of arrow 1, and pull out the head restraint in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 68.
› To **insert** the headrest, push the headrest into the seat backrest in the direction of arrow 3 until the locking button clicks into place.

Front seat heating



Fig. 69
Buttons for heating the front seats

The seat backrests and seats can be heated electrically.

Seat heating buttons » Fig. 69

Left seat heating
Right seat heating

› To **turn on** the heating with maximum heat , press the key or button.

By repeatedly pressing the button, the heat is turned down until it is completely **switched off**. The level of the seat heating is indicated by the number of illuminated warning lights in the switch.

The seat heating only operates when the engine is running.

WARNING

If you are sensitive to pain and/or temperature, e.g. through medication, paralysis or because of chronic illness (e.g. diabetes), we recommend not to use the seat heating. If the seat heating is used, we recommend to make regular breaks in your journey when driving long distances, so that the body can recuperate from the stress of the journey. Please consult your doctor, who can evaluate your specific condition.

CAUTION

The following instructions should be observed to avoid damage to the seats.
- Do not kneel on the seats or otherwise apply concentrated pressure to them.
- Do not switch on the heating for unoccupied seats.
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have objects on them (e.g. a child seat, bag or similar).
- Do not switch on the heating for seats which have seat covers or protective covers on them.

Note

If the on-board voltage decreases, the seat heating switches off automatically » page 149, *Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection*.

Useful features

Interior fittings

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Ticket holder 77
Storage compartment on the dash panel 78
stowage compartments in the doors 78
Storage compartment in the front centre console 78
USB and AUX input 79
Cup holders 79
Cigarette lighter 80
Ashtray 80
12-volt socket 81
Waste container 81
Multimedia holder 82
Storage compartment under the front arm rest 82
storage net in the front centre console 83
Glasses compartment 83
Storage compartment on the front passenger side 83
Storage compartment under the front passenger seat 84
Clothes hook 84
Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats 84
Storage compartment in the rear centre console 84
Folding table on the front seat backrest 85
Folding table on the middle seat backrest 85
Removable through-loading bag 85

WARNING

- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - There is a risk of an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- Do not carry any objects on the front passenger seat except objects designed for this purpose (e.g. child seats) – risk of accident!
- No objects should be placed in the storage compartments nor in the drinks holders; the vehicle occupants could be endangered if there is sudden braking or the vehicle collides with something.
- For safety reasons, lockable storage compartments should be closed while driving - there is a risk of injury from the opened lid or through the loose objects in the compartment.
- Make sure no objects protrude from the storage compartments - There is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible loads for the storage compartments, pockets and nets - There is a risk of injury and a risk of damage to the compartments, pockets and nets!
- Ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like should only be stored in the ashtray - There is a risk of fire/burns!
- The storage compartments, multimedia holder and waste container are not a substitute for the ashtray and must not be used for such purposes – There is a risk of fire!

CAUTION

Do not place any large or sharp objects in the storage compartments, pockets and nets -There is a risk of damage to the compartments, pockets and nets.

Ticket holder



Fig. 70
Ticket holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The ticket holder» Fig. 70 is provided for the holding and displaying e.g. car park tickets.

Storage compartment on the dash panel



Fig. 71
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To the **Open** press the button » Fig. 71, the cover opens in the direction of arrow.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Certain models do not have a storage compartment lid.

! CAUTION

Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the storage compartment - in the event of high temperatures there is risk of damage.

stowage compartments in the doors

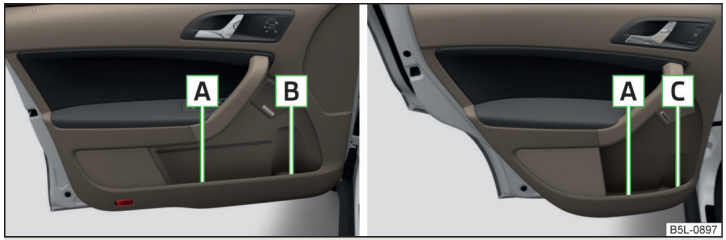


Fig. 72 **Storage compartments: in the front door/in the rear door**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Storage compartments » Fig. 72

A Storage compartment
B Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 1 l
C Bottle holder with a capacity of max. 0.5 l

! WARNING

The storage compartment A » Fig. 72 is to be used exclusively for storing objects which do not stick out - There is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of the side airbags.

Storage compartment in the front centre console



Fig. 73
Non-lockable compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The storage compartment is in the front of the centre console » Fig. 73.

USB and AUX input

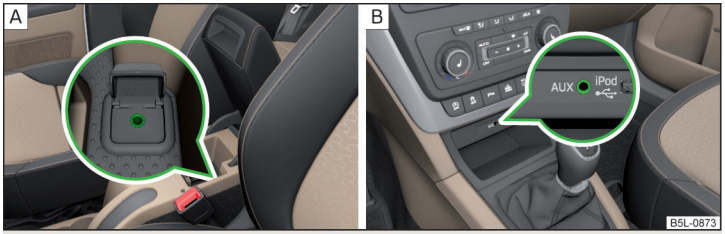


Fig. 74 **AUX input: underneath the armrest / above the storage compartment**



Fig. 75
USB input

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Depending on equipment fitted, the AUX input is located below the armrest » Fig. 74 - A or above the storage compartment » Fig. 74 - B.

The USB input (marked with iPod and ⇠) is located above the storage compartment » Fig. 75.

Information on use » *Owner's Manual infotainment* or » *The Radio Owner's Manual*.

Cup holders

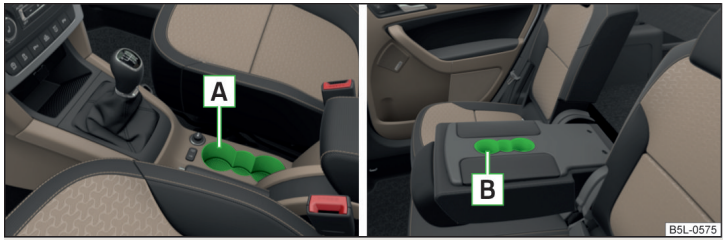


Fig. 76 **Cup holders: in the front centre console / on the folding table in the centre backrest**

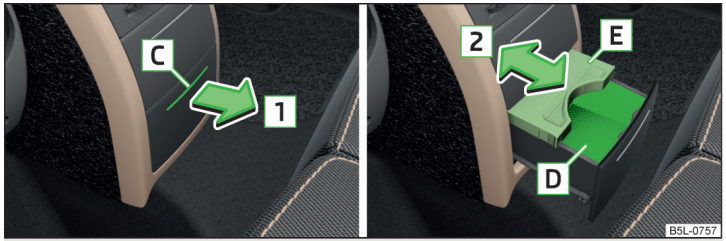


Fig. 77 **Cup holders in the rear center console: Open / Resize**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

In the cup holders A and B two drinks containers can be placed in each » Fig. 76.

Cup holder D in rear centre console

› To **Open** Press the holder in the area C » Fig. 77. The holder slides out.
› Pull the holder up to the stop in the arrow direction 1 resize by moving the plate E in direction of arrow 2.
› To **close**, push in the holder against the direction of arrow 1.

A 1.5 litre bottle (max. capacity) can be stored in the holder D.

WARNING

- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – There is a risk of scalding!

CAUTION

- Do not leave open beverage containers in the cup holders during the journey. There is a risk of spilling e.g. when braking which may cause damage to the electrical components or seat upholstery.
- Before folding the rear centre seat, the holder D » Fig. 77 must be closed - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Cigarette lighter



Fig. 78
Cigarette lighter

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To **use** the lighter, push it in as far as the stop and wait until the glowing lighter clicks out again » Fig. 78.
› Take out the glowing lighter instantly, use it and insert it back into the socket.

WARNING

- The cigarette lighter also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave people who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle - there is a risk of burning, fire or damage to the vehicle interior.
- Be careful when using the cigarette lighter - There is a risk of burns.

Note

The cigarette lighter socket can also be used as a 12 volt socket.

Ashtray

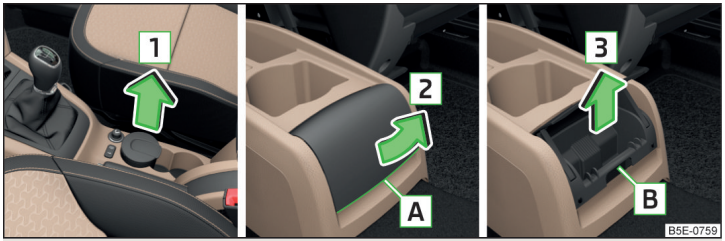


Fig. 79 **Low centre console: Remove front ashtray / open rear ashtray / remove rear ashtray**

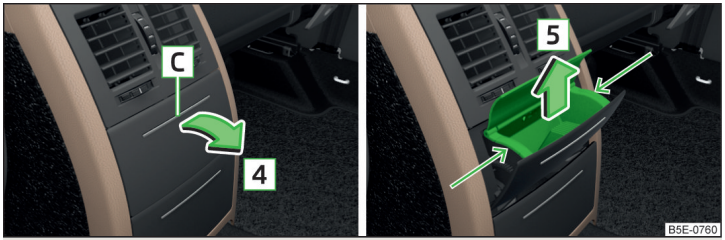


Fig. 80 **High centre console: Open rear ashtray / Removing rear ashtray insert**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The ashtray can be used for ash, cigarettes, cigars and the like.

Removable front ashtray

› Grasp the ashtray (not by the lid) and **remove**it in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 79.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Rear ashtray - low centre console

› To **open**, hold the lid on the edge A and fold in the direction of arrow 2 until the stop --» Fig. 79.

› To **remove**Grasp the ashtray at handle B and remove in direction of arrow 3.
› To **use** Insert the ashtray in the console away from arrow 3 and push in.

Rear ashtray - high centre console
› To **open**, press on the lid of the glasses compartment in area C. The ashtray opens out in the direction of the arrow 4» Fig. 80.
› To **remove the ashtray insert** press the lid gently 4 up to the stop.
› Grasp the ashtray insert in the area of arrow and remove it in the direction of arrow 5.
› To the **insert the ashtray insert** push in the insert away from the arrow 5 and push in.

WARNING
Never place hot or flammable objects in the ashtray – risk of fire!

CAUTION
The ashtray in the higher central console must be closed before folding forward the rear middle seat - Otherwise there is a risk of damage.

12-volt socket

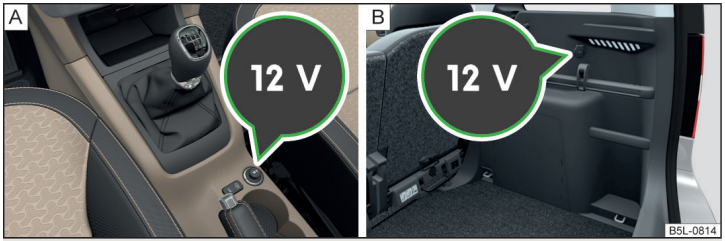


Fig. 81 **12 volt socket cover: in the front center console / in the luggage compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To **use**, remove the cover of the socket » Fig. 81 - A or open the cover of the socket » Fig. 81 - B.
› Connect the plug for the electrical appliance to the socket.

WARNING
- Do not place anything on the dashboard. These objects might slide or fall down when driving and may distract you from concentrating on the traffic – There is a risk of accident!
- Make sure that while driving no objects can enter the driver's footwell - There is a risk of an accident!
- Stow all devices safely during the journey to prevent them from being thrown around the interior in the event of a sudden braking manoeuvre or an accident – There is a risk of death!
- The devices may warm up during operation – There is a risk of injury or fire!
- Improper use of the power sockets and the electrical accessories can cause fires, burns and other serious injuries.
- The socket also works if the ignition is switched off. When leaving the vehicle, never leave persons who are not completely independent, such as children, unattended in the vehicle.

CAUTION
- The sockets can only be used for the connection of approved electrical accessories with a total power consumption of up to 120 watts - otherwise the electrical system of the vehicle may be damaged.
- Connecting appliances when the engine is not running will drain the battery of the vehicle!
- Before switching the ignition on / off or before starting the engine, switch off the devices which are connected to the sockets - there is a risk of damage to the equipment due to voltage fluctuations.

Waste container

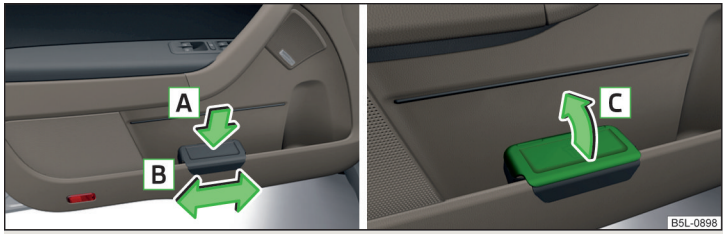


Fig. 82 **Waste containers: Inserting and moving/opening**

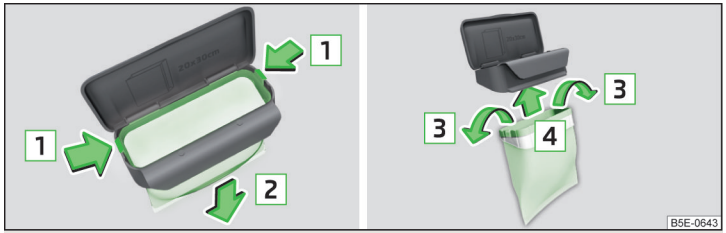


Fig. 83 **Replacing bags**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The waste container can be inserted into the slot in the door.

Insert waste container
› Position the waste container at the front edge of the slot.
› Push the waste container to the back in the direction of the arrow A » Fig. 82.
› Push the waste container as required in the direction of arrow B.

Remove the waste container
› Remove the waste container in the opposite direction to the arrow A » Fig. 82.

Open/close waste container
› Lift the lid in the direction of arrow C » Fig. 82.

Closing takes place in reverse order.

Replace bags
› Remove the waste container from the slot.
› Press the two locking lugs on the frame in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 83.
› Pull the bag together with the frame down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the bag from the frame.
› Pull the new bag through the frame and pull it over the frame in the direction of arrow 3.
› Place the bag with the frame in the direction of arrow 4 into the container body, so that the two lugs engage audibly on the frame.

Note
We recommend that you use 20x30 cm bags.

Multimedia holder

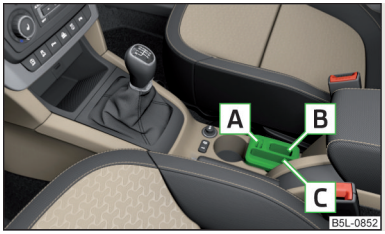


Fig. 84
Multimedia holder

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Multimedia holder » Fig. 84
A Storage compartment for storing two coins
B Storage compartment for storing the vehicle key
C Storage compartment for storing a mobile phone

Storage compartment under the front arm rest

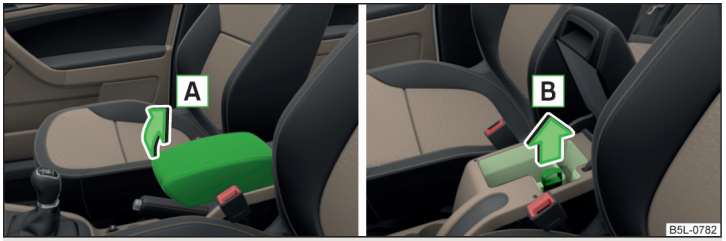


Fig. 85 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Storage compartment
› To **open**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 85.
› To **close**, lift the armrest in the direction of arrow A until the stop and then fold down against the direction of the arrow A.

Air supply
› To **open**, pull the handle in the direction of arrow B » Fig. 85.

› To **close**, turn the dial away from arrow B until the stop.

When the air inlet is opened, the air flows into the storage compartment with a temperature corresponding to the control dial settings on the A/C unit, depending on the outer climate conditions.

The air inlet in the storage compartment is connected to position through adjustment of the control dial for air distribution. This setting causes the maximum amount of air to flow into the storage compartment (depending on the rotary regulator position for the fan).

storage net in the front centre console



Fig. 86
Storage net

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The storage nets» Fig. 86 are intended for the storage of e.g. maps, magazines, etc.

The maximum permissible load of the net is 0.5 kg.

Glasses compartment

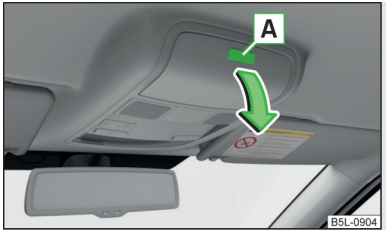


Fig. 87
Opening the glasses storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To **open**, press the -- button. The compartment folds in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 87.
› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

! CAUTION

▪ Do not put any heat-sensitive objects in the glasses storage box – there is risk of damage at high temperatures.
▪ The compartment must be closed before leaving and locking the vehicle – There is a risk of impairment to the functions of the anti-theft alarm system.

Storage compartment on the front passenger side

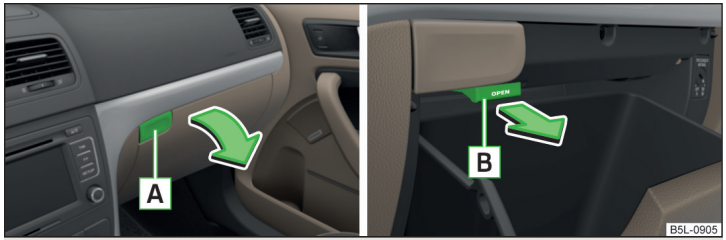


Fig. 88 **Open storage compartment / open air supply**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

Storage compartment

› To **open**, press the -- button. The cover folds in the arrow direction» Fig. 88.
› To **close**, swing the lid against the direction of the arrow until it audibly clicks into place.

Air supply

› To **Open** pull the lever B in the direction of the arrow to the stop » Fig. 88.
› To **close**, turn the lever against the direction of the arrow until it stops.

The temperature of the storage compartment supplied with air is dependent on the setting in the air conditioning.

i Note

A pen holder is provided in the stowage compartment.

Storage compartment under the front passenger seat



Fig. 89
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To **open**, pull the handle in direction of arrow 1 and open the compartment in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 89.
› To **close**, push in the compartment away from arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

The maximum permissible load of the storage compartment is 1.5 kg.

Clothes hook

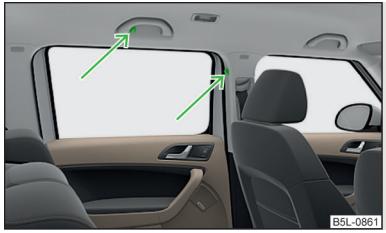


Fig. 90
Clothes hooks

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The clothes hooks are located on the middle door pillars of the vehicle and on the handle of the headliner above each of the rear doors » Fig. 90.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 2 kg.

! WARNING

- Never leave any heavy or sharp-edged objects in the pockets of the items of clothing hung up - There is a risk of injury.
- Do not use hangers to hang up the clothes - there is a risk of restricting the effectiveness of head airbags and a danger of injury from the hanger.
- Make sure that any clothes hanging from the hooks do not impede your vision.

Storage pockets on the backs of the front seats



Fig. 91
Map pockets

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The storage pockets » Fig. 91 are intended for the storage of maps, magazines, etc.

Storage compartment in the rear centre console



Fig. 92
Opening the storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› **To open**Pull the top edge and open the compartment in the arrow direction» Fig. 92.

› To **close**, swivel the compartment against the direction of the arrow.

CAUTION

Before folding forward the rear centre seat, the storage compartment must be closed - there is a risk of damage to the storage compartment.

Folding table on the front seat backrest



Fig. 93
Fold down the folding table

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

› To **Unfold** Raise the table in the direction of the arrow in the horizontal position » Fig. 93.
› **Fold** the table back into the vertical position by push the table away from the arrow.

The maximum permissible load for the table is 10 kg.

WARNING

- The table must not be in the horizontal position while driving - risk of injury.
- Do not use any cups or beakers which are made of brittle material (e.g. glass, porcelain). This could lead to injuries in the event of an accident.
- Never put hot beverage containers in the table cup holder. If the vehicle moves, they may spill – There is a risk of scalding!

Folding table on the middle seat backrest



Fig. 94
Middle seat backrest already folded forward

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

After folding forwards,the centre seat backrest can be used as an armrest or table with cup holders » Fig. 94.

CAUTION

If the middle rear seat backrest should be folded forward for lengthy periods, then make sure that the belt locks are not located below it - this can warp the upholstery or fabric.

Removable through-loading bag

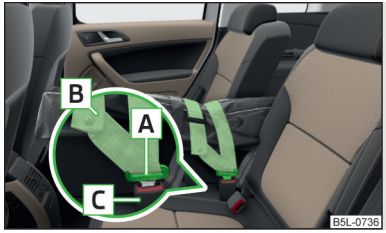


Fig. 95
Securing the removable through-loading bag

Read and observe ! and ! on page 77 first.

The removable through-loading bag (hereinafter referred to as through-loading bag) is used exclusively for transporting skis (max. 2 pairs).

Loading through-loading bag and skis

› Fold the middle rear seat backrest forwards until it rests on the seat » page 73.

› Place the empty through-loading bag in such a way that the end of the bag with the zip is in the boot.
› Push the skis and poles with the tips backwards into the through-loading bag and secure the bag.

Securing through-loading bag and skis

› Pull the securing belt with both lock tongues out of the pocket of the through-loading bag.
› Insert the lock tongues A » Fig. 95 in the belt locks of the rear middle seat belt C, first on the one side and then on the other side.
› Place the securing belt in the middle of the skis between the heel and the tip of the bindings and pull the securing belt tight at the free end of the belt B.

WARNING

- The total weight of the skis which are transported must not exceed 10 kg.
- Always stow and secure the skis and the bag securely - otherwise there is a risk of injury or accident!

CAUTION

Never fold and stow the through-loading bag when it is wet -There is a risk of damaging the through-loading bag.

Tablet holder

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Attaching the rear headrests 86
Handle holder 87

External devices (e.g. tablet, smartphone, etc.) measuring min. 122 mm and max. 195 mm can be secured in the support.

The maximum permissible load of the compartment is 750 g.

CAUTION

Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the holder - there is a risk of damage or functional impairment.

Attaching the rear headrests



Fig. 96 **Inserting: Adapter / holder**



Fig. 97 **Removing: Holder / Adapter**

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

› To **insert**, attach the opened adapter to the guide rods of the front headrest and clip in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 96 » !.
› Clip the holder in the direction of arrow 2 into the adapter.
› To **remove**, pull on the securing tab A in direction of arrow 3 and take the holder in direction of arrow 4 out of the adapter » Fig. 97.
› Press the adapter and remove from the guide rods of the headrest in the direction of arrow 5.

WARNING

Carefully clip in the adapter - there is a risk of injuring your finger.

Handle holder

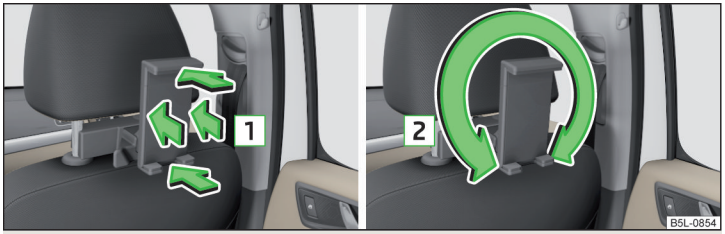


Fig. 98 **Tilt and rotate holder**

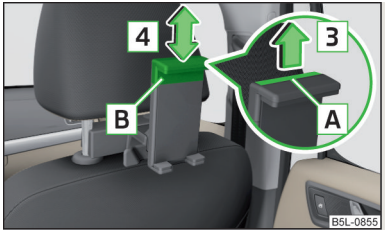


Fig. 99
Adjust holder size

Read and observe ! on page 86 first.

The holder may be --**tipped** by 30° in the direction of the arrow 1 and --**turned** by 360° in the direction of arrow 2» Fig. 98.

› To **adjust the holder size**, pull out the securing tab A in the direction of arrow 3 and push the part B in the direction of arrow 4 to the desired position » Fig. 99.

Transport of cargo

Luggage Storage and Transport

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fastening elements 88
Fixing nets 88
Multifunction pocket 89
Fastening bar with sliding hook 89
Flexible storage compartment 89
Floor covering on both sides 90
Luggage compartment cover 90
Net partition 91
Storage compartments 91
Removable storage box 92
Removable lamp 92
Class N1 vehicles 93

When transporting heavy objects, the driving characteristics change due to the shift in the centre of gravity. The speed and style of driving must be adjusted accordingly.

When transporting cargo, the following instructions must be adhered to

- Distribute the load evenly in the luggage compartment and secure it with suitable lashing straps to the lashing eyes or fixing nets so that they cannot slip.
- Place heavy objects as far forward as possible.
- Tyre pressure should be adjusted for the load.

In the event of an accident, even small and light objects gain so much kinetic energy that they can cause severe injuries.

The magnitude of the kinetic energy is dependent on the speed at which the vehicle is travelling and the weight of the object.

WARNING

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks etc. If heavy objects have not been suitably secured, there is a risk of injury!
- Do not exceed the permissible axle loads and permissible gross weight of the vehicle – There is a risk of an accident!
- An unsecured dirt or improperly attached load could slip during a sudden manoeuvre or in an accident - There is a risk of injury!
- Loose cargo could hit a deployed airbag and injure occupants – danger of death!
- When transporting loads in the luggage compartment that has been enlarged by folding one of the rear seats forward, care should be taken to ensure the safety of passengers transported on the other rear seat.

CAUTION

- Never exceed the maximum permissible load of the respective fasteners, nets, hooks, etc. - these could be damaged.
- Please ensure that the heating elements for the rear window heater are not damaged as a result of abrasive objects.
- Do not place sharp objects in the nets and storage compartments in the luggage compartment - there is a risk of damage to the net as well as the compartments.
- Put the items in the storage compartments carefully and do not put point-shaped objects - there is a risk of damage to the compartments.

Fastening elements



Fig. 100 **Fasteners: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The fasteners are located on both sides of the luggage compartment.

Overview of the fastening elements » Fig. 100

- A Lashing eyes for securing items of luggage, fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- B Fastening strip with integrated hook for attaching fastening nets and multifunction pocket
- C Lashing eyes **only** for fastening fixing nets

The maximum static load of the individual lashing eyes A is 350 kg C is 150 kg.

Fixing nets

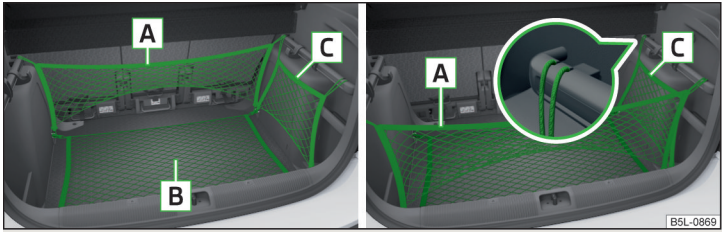


Fig. 101 **Fastening examples for nets**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

Fastening examples for nets » Fig. 101

- A Horizontal pocket
- B Floor net
- C Vertical pocket

The maximum permissible load of each of the nets is 1.5 kg.

Multifunction pocket



Fig. 102
Securing the multifunction pocket

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The pocket » Fig. 102 can be secured to the fastening elements A and B » Fig. 100 *on page 88*.

The maximum permissible load for the bag attached to the fastening element is 3 kg.

! CAUTION

In vehicles with a variable loading floor, it is not possible to attach the bag to the fastening elements.

Fastening bar with sliding hook



Fig. 103 **Sliding hook onto the mounting bar / removing hook**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

A fastening bar is located on both sides of the luggage compartment with two moveable hooks each, in order to attach small items of luggage, such as bags, etc.

The maximum permissible load of each of the hooks is 7.5 kg.

Moving the hook

› Fold up the hook in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 103 until an angle of approx. 45° is reached.
› Move the hook in the direction of the arrow 2 into the desired position and fold down the hook as far as the stop in direction of arrow 3.

Removing hooks

The hook can be removed only in the rear region of the attachment bar.

› Fold the hook upwards in direction of arrow 4 » Fig. 103 until it disengages, and remove in the direction of arrow 5.

Inserting hook

› Position the hook on the fastening strip in a vertical position in direction of arrow 5 » Fig. 103 and lightly press it on.
› Fold the hook up to the stop away from arrow 4 until it locks.

Flexible storage compartment

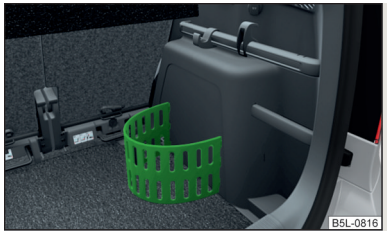


Fig. 104
Flexible storage compartment

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The flexible storage compartment can be installed on the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 104.

The storage compartment is designed for storing small objects with a maximum total weight of 8 kg.

› To **use**,insert the two ends of the storage compartment into the openings in the side trim of the luggage compartment and push the shelf down to lock.
› To **remove** grasp the storage compartment on both top edges, press the upper corners inwards and release the storage compartment by pulling upwards.
› Remove the storage compartment by pulling towards you.

CAUTION

The flexible storage compartment cannot be installed on vehicles with the variable loading floor.

Floor covering on both sides

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

You can fit a double-sided floor covering in the luggage compartment. One side is made of fabric, the other side is washable (suitable for transporting wet or dirty items).

Luggage compartment cover

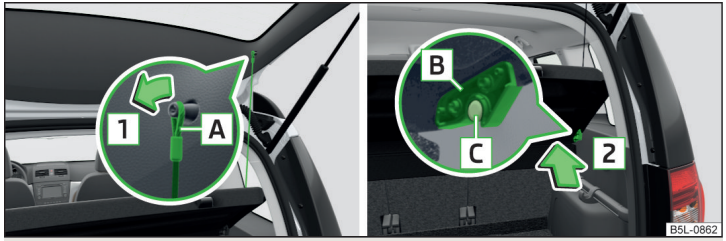


Fig. 105 **Remove the luggage compartment cover**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

If the support straps A » Fig. 105 are attached to the boot lid, then opening the lid will raise the boot lid cover (hereafter referred to as cover).

Removing

› Partially fold the rear seat backrests forward » page 73, *Adjusting the angle of the seat backrest*.
› On both sides of the boot lid, unhook the straps A in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 105.
› Place the cover in the horizontal position.
› Press on the two sides to the underside of the cover in the region of the studs C in the direction of arrow 2.
› Fold the slackened front part of the boot cover over the head restraints of the rear seats.
› Slightly tilt the cover and remove.

Fitting

› Place the cover on the contact surfaces of the side trim panel.
› Position the mounts on the cover B onto the side trim panel via pins C » Fig. 105.
› Press on the two sides to the upper side of the cover in the region of the studs C.

The fixture B must lock into place of the studs C on both sides of the luggage compartment.

› Unhook the straps A on both sides of the boot lid.

WARNING

Do not place any objects on the cover during the trip - there is a risk of injury if braking suddenly or colliding!

Net partition

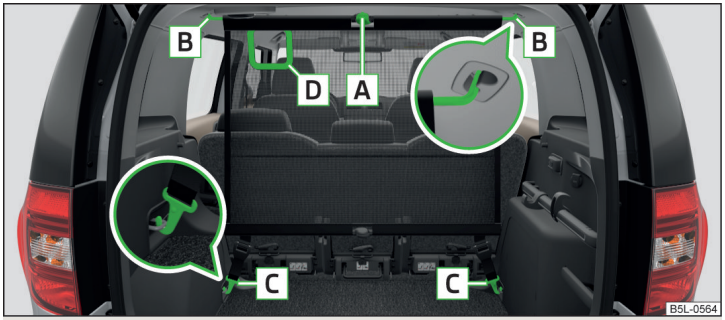


Fig. 106 **Net partition behind the rear seats**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The net partition can either fitted behind the rear seats or behind the front seats.

Fitting/removing behind the rear seats

› Remove the luggage compartment cover » page 90, *Luggage compartment cover*.
› Remove the net partition from the bag.
› Unfold both parts of the cross rod until they are heard to engage.
› First insert the rod into the mount B » Fig. 106 on one side and push it forwards. In the same way, insert the cross rod into the mount B on the other side of the vehicle.
› Hang the carabines C at the belt ends into the lashing eyes behind the rear seats.
› Pull the belts through the tensioning clasp.

Removingis carried out in the reverse order.

Packing the net partition

› Press the red button of the joint A » Fig. 106. The joint is undone.
› Put the net partition folded together in the bag and close it.
› Attach the bag with the aid of the plastic carabines to the eyes on the left and right boot trim panel.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the rear seats with variable loading floor is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats without variable loading floor. Use the lower fixing eyelets on the carrier rails in order to attach the carabines.

Installing and removing the net partition behind the front seats is carried out in the same way as behind the rear seats. Use the fixing eyelets on the rear of the front seats to attach the carabines. To enlarge the boot, the rear seats can be removed » page 74.

The opening D » Fig. 106 in the net partition is for passing the three-point seat belt » page 16 through.

Storage compartments

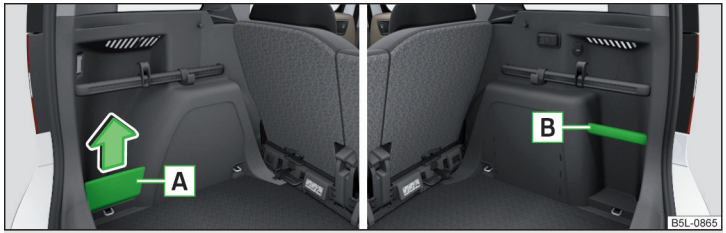


Fig. 107 **Storage compartment on the left / right**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The cover for the storage compartment A » Fig. 107 can be removed, thus enlarging the boot.

› Grasp the top part of the cover A and carefully remove it in the direction of the arrow.

The storage compartment A is suitable for stowing small objects weighing up to 1.5 kg in total, and the compartment B up to 0.5 kg.

Removable storage box



Fig. 108
Storage box

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The storage box » Fig. 108 is placed under the variable loading floor and can be taken out.

There is a storage space for the vehicle tool kit under the storage box » page 157, *Vehicle tool kit*.

! WARNING

The removable storage box must be located under the variable loading floor for the safe use of the variable loading floor.

Removable lamp

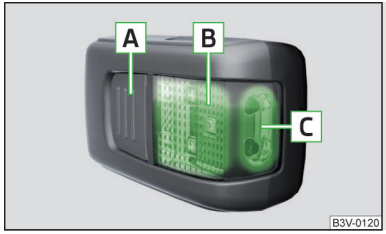


Fig. 109
Removable lamp

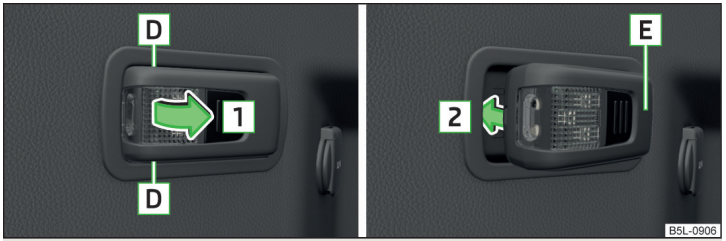


Fig. 110 **Removable light: Removing / Inserting**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 88 first.

The light is located on the right side of the luggage compartment and is used to light the luggage compartment or as a portable light.

The lamp is fitted with magnets. As a result, this can, for example, be fitted to the vehicle body.

Description of the light » Fig. 109

A Button to turn on / off the light
B Part that lights up when the lamp is in the mount
C Part that lights up when the lamp is not in the mount

If the light is in the **mount**, this will illuminate when the boot lid is opened.

› To **remove**, hold the light in the area D and swivel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 110.
› To **switch on** the removed light, press button A » Fig. 109. Pressing the light again will **switched it off**.
› To **insert**, first of all insert the light with the rear part E into the mount » Fig. 110 and then push the light in the direction of arrow 2 until it audibly clicks into place.

If the light is not switched off and is correctly inserted in the mount, the LED diodes in the front part of the light C » Fig. 109 are automatically switched off.

If the lamp is not correctly inserted into the holder, this does not light up when the boot lid is opened and the rechargeable batteries are not charged. ▸

Lamp charges
The lamp is supplied by three rechargeable type NiMH AAA batteries. The batteries are charged continuously with the engine running (to fully charge the battery takes approximately 3 hours).

Replace batteries » page 166.

CAUTION
The light is not waterproof, so it must be protected from humidity - otherwise there is risk of damage.

Class N1 vehicles

Read and observe and on page 88 first.

On class N1 vehicles, which are not fitted with a protective grille, a lashing set which complies with the standard EN 12195 (1 - 4) must be used for fastening the load.

Proper functioning of the electrical installation is essential for safe vehicle operation. It is important to ensure that the electrical installation is not damaged during the adjustment process or when the storage area is being loaded and unloaded.

Variable loading floor in the luggage compartment (Estate)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Removing/fitting variable loading floor 93
Secure the variable loading floor in the raised position 93
Removing/installing the carrier rails 94
Using the variable loading floor with a spare wheel 94

The variable loading floor makes it easier to handle bulky goods and creates an even surface when the rear seat backrests are folded forward.

The maximum permissible load of the variable loading floor is 75 kg.

Removing/fitting variable loading floor

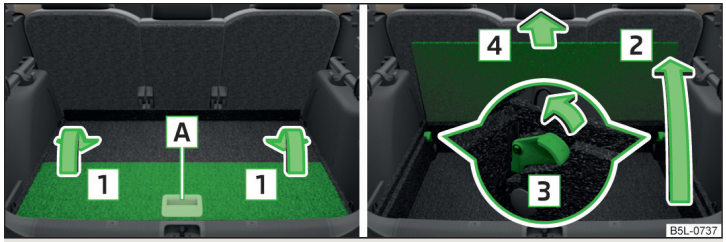


Fig. 111 **Fold up / removal variable loading floor**

› To **fold together**, grasp the variable loading floor on handle A and lift in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 111.
› Fold up the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 2.
› Pull on both sides of the locking levers in direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the variable loading floor in direction of arrow 4.

Insertion takes place in reverse order.

Secure the variable loading floor in the raised position

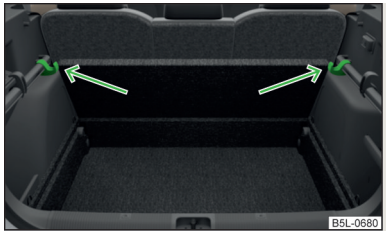


Fig. 112
Secured loading floor in the raised position

› Fold up the hooks on the fastening strip in direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 103 *on page 89*.
› Fold up the variable loading floor behind the rear back backrests.
› Fold down the hooks in direction of arrow 3 » Fig. 103 *on page 89* as far as the stop.
› Support the variable loading floor on the hooks folded downwards » Fig. 112.

Removing/installing the carrier rails

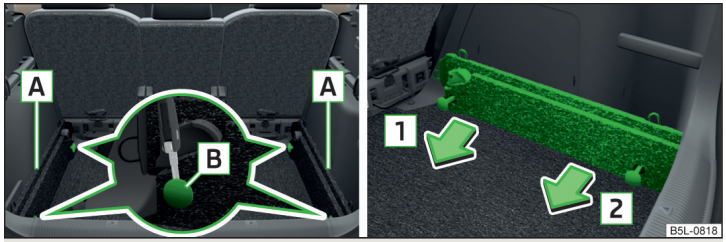


Fig. 113 **Slacken check points/remove carrier rails**

Removing

› Undo the securing points B » Fig. 113 on the carrier rails using the vehicle key or a flat screwdriver.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the front area and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 1.
› Hold the carrier rail A in the rear area and loosen and remove by pulling in the direction of arrow 2.

Fitting

› Position the carrier rails on the sides of the boot.
› Press the two securing points B » Fig. 113 on each carrier rail to the stop.
› Check the attachment of the carrier rails by pulling it.

Using the variable loading floor with a spare wheel

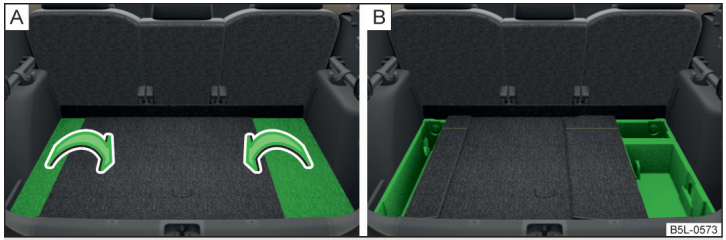


Fig. 114 **Fold up the side panels of the variable loading floor / space under the variable loading floor**

The sides of the variable loading floor can be folded in the direction of arrow » Fig. 114 - A.

The room under the variable loading floor » Fig. 114 - B can be used to stow the load.

Transportation on the roof rack

Roof load

The maximum permitted weight of the load incl. carriers is 100 kg.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed to aid road safety when transporting cargo on the roof rack.
- Always distribute the load on the roof rack evenly and secure properly with suitable lashing straps or tensioning straps.
- When transporting heavy objects or objects which take up a large area on the roof rack system, the handling of the car may change as a result of the displacement of the centre of gravity. The style of driving and speed must therefore be adapted to the current circumstances.
- The permissible roof load, permissible axle loads and permissible total vehicle weight must not be exceeded under any circumstances – risk of accident!

CAUTION

- Make sure that the sliding / tilting roof or the boot lid does not collide with the roof load when opened.
- Ensure the roof aerial is not impaired by the load being transported.

Note

We recommend that you use a roof rack from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Heating and ventilation

Heating, manual air conditioning system, Climatronic

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Heating and manual air conditioning 95
Climatronic (automatic air conditioning) 96
Climatronic - automatic operation 97
Air distribution control 97
Air outlet vents 98

The heater heats and ventilates the vehicle interior. The air conditioning system also cools and dehumidifies the vehicle interior.

The heating effect is dependent upon the coolant temperature, thus full heat output only occurs when the engine has reached its operating temperature.

The cooling system works under the following conditions.

✓ The cooling system is switched on.
✓ The engine is running.
✓ The outside temperature is above 2 °C.
✓ The blower is switched on.

When the cooling system is switched on, it prevents misting of the windscreen and windows.

It is possible to boost the effectiveness of the cooling system by briefly activating the air recirculation system» page 97.

Health protection

To reduce health risks (e.g. common colds), the following instructions for the use of the cooling system are to be observed.

- The difference between the outside temperature and the inside temperature should not be greater than 5 °C.
- The cooling system should be turned off about 10 minutes before the end of the journey.
- Once a year, a disinfection of the air conditioner is to be carried out by a specialist company.

WARNING

- The blower should always be on to prevent the windows from misting. Otherwise there is a risk of accident.
- Under certain circumstances, air at a temperature of about 5 °C can flow out of the vents when the cooling system is switched on.

Note

- The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free of e.g. ice, snow or leaves to ensure that the heating and cooling system operates properly.
- After switching on the cooling **Condensation** from the evaporator of the air conditioning may drip down and form a puddle below the vehicle. This is not a leak!
- If the coolant temperature is too high, the cooling system is switched off to ensure that the engine cools down.

Heating and manual air conditioning

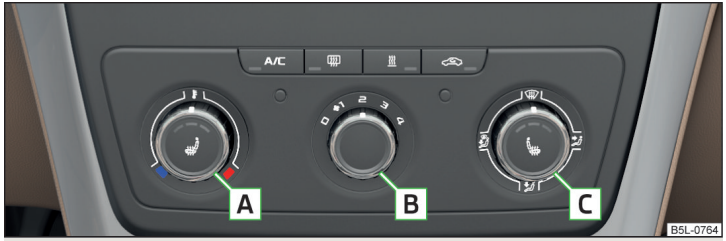


Fig. 115 **Controls of the heating / air conditioning**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 115.

A Set the temperature
  ▸ Reduce the temperature / increase the temperature
B Setting the fan speed (stage 0: Fan off, level 4: high-speed)
C Set the direction of the air outlet » page 98
A/C Switching the cooling system on/off
Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 65

Aux. heating and ventilation on / switch off » page 99
Switch recirculation on/off » page 97

When the function is switched on, the indicator light in the button lights up.

Information on cooling system
After pressing the button **A/C** the indicator light on the button lights up, even if not all the conditions for the cooling system have been met. The cooling system starts to work as soon as the following conditions have been met » page 95.

Note
To ensure adequate thermal comfort, during operation of the manual air conditioning there could be an increase in the engine idle speed in some circumstances.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)

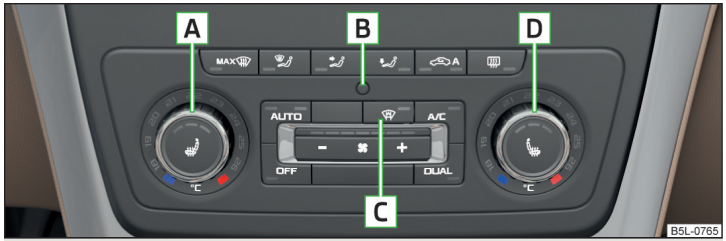


Fig. 116 **Controls the Climatronic**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

Individual functions can be set or switched on by turning the dial or pressing the corresponding button » Fig. 116.

A Adjust the temperature for the left side (or for both sides)
- Reduce the temperature / increase the temperature

B Interior temperature sensor

C Depending on equipment fitted:
- Switching the windscreen heater on/off » page 65
- Switch the aux. heating and ventilation on/off » page 99

D Adjust the temperature for the right side
- Reduce the temperature / Increase the temperature

Adjust the blower speed
- + Increase speed
- – Decrease speed

MAX Switching the airflow to the windscreen on and off
Air flow to the windows
Air flow to the upper body
Air flow in the footwell
Switch the automatic recirculation on/off » page 97
Switch on/off the rear window heater » page 65
AUTO Switching automatic mode on » page 97
OFF Switch the Climatronic system off
A/C Switching the cooling system on/off
DUAL Switch the temperature setting in Dual mode on/off

When the function is switched on, the indicator light in the button lights up.

After the cooling system is switched off, only the ventilation function remains active whereby the minimum temperature that can be reached is the outside temperature.

Setting temperature
The interior temperature for the left and right side can be set separately or together.

The temperature **for both sides,** is set by turning the knob A » Fig. 116 (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is not illuminated).

The temperature **for the right side** is adjusted by turning the knob D (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

The temperature **for the left side** is adjusted by turning the knob A (the indicator light in the button **DUAL** is lit).

At a temperature setting below 18 ° C at the start of the numerical scale, the symbol will illuminate, Climatronic is using **Maximum cooling performance**.

At a temperature setting above 26 ° C at the end of the numerical scale, the symbol will illuminate, Climatronic is using **maximum heat output**.

There is no automatic temperature control in the two end positions. In the range between 18 °C to 26 °C, an automatic temperature control takes place.

Controlling blower
The Climatronic system controls the blower stages automatically in line with the interior temperature. However, the blower stages can be manually adapted to suit your particular needs.

If the blower speed is reduced to a minimum, Climatronic is switched off.

The set blower speed is displayed above the button when the respective number of indicator lights come on.

CAUTION
Do not cover the interior temperature sensor H » Fig. 116 - the function of the Climatronic could be impaired.

Note
- If the windscreen mists up, press the button MAX. Press the button **AUTO** once the windscreen has demisted.
- In order to ensure adequate thermal comfort, there may be an increase in engine idle speed during operation of the Climatronic in some circumstances.

Climatronic - automatic operation

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

The automatic mode is used in order to maintain a constant temperature and to demist the windows in the interior of the car.

If the warning light in the top right corner of the button **AUTO** lights up, the Climatronic operates in "HIGH"-mode.

Upon pressing the **AUTO** button again, the Climatronic switches to "LOW"-mode and the indicator light in the top left corner lights up. The Climatronic uses only in this mode the lower blower speed. However taking into account the noise level, this is more comfortable, yet be aware that the effectiveness of the air conditioning system is reduced particularly if the vehicle is fully occupied.

By pressing the button **AUTO** again, it is changed to "HIGH"-mode.

Automatic mode can be **switched off** by pressing one of the buttons for the air distribution or by increasing/decreasing the blower speed. The temperature regulation is continued.

Note
Climatronic is set to the "HIGH" mode at the factory.

Air distribution control

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

The recirculation mode prevents contaminated outside air getting into the interior of the vehicle. In recirculated air mode air is sucked out of the interior of the vehicle and then fed back into the interior.

Heating and manual air conditioning system
› To **switch on** press the button.
› To **switch off**, press the button again.

If the air distribution control is set to position when the recirculation modes is switched on, the recirculated-air mode is switched off.

By pressing the button, the air recirculation also in this position can be switched on again.

Climatronic (automatic air conditioning)
› To **turn the recirculation mode on,** press the Symbol key A repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **left** side of the button.
› **To activate the automatic recirculation mode,** press the Symbol key A repeatedly until the indicator light is lit on the **right** side of the button.

The Climatronic can have a sensor that measures the air recirculation mode and automatically turns on if there is an increased concentration of pollutants in the incoming air.

When the pollutant concentration decreases to the normal level, the recirculated air mode is automatically switched off.

If the air quality sensor does not automatically switch on the recirculated air mode, you can switch it on yourself by pressing the button A. The indicator light lights up in the button on the left side.

To **turn off the air recirculation** or **to deactivate the automatic air recirculation**, press the **AUTO** button of press the A symbol button repeatedly until the warning lights in the button go out.

WARNING
The recirculation system cannot be switched on for a longer period of time, because no fresh air is fed through from the outside. "Stale air" may result in fatigue in the driver and occupants, reduce attention levels and also cause the windows to mist up. As soon as windows mist up, turn on the recirculation system immediately - There is a risk of accident!

CAUTION

We recommend not smoking in the vehicle when the recirculating air operation is switched on. The smoke sucked from the interior is deposited on the evaporator of the air conditioner. This produces a permanent odour when the air conditioning system is operating which can only be eliminated through considerable effort and expense (replacement of compressor).

Note

The Climatronic automatic air distribution control operates only if the outside temperature is higher than approx. 2 °C.

Air outlet vents

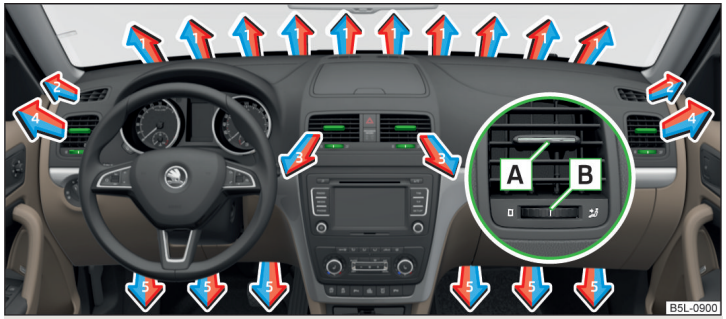


Fig. 117 **Air vents at the front**

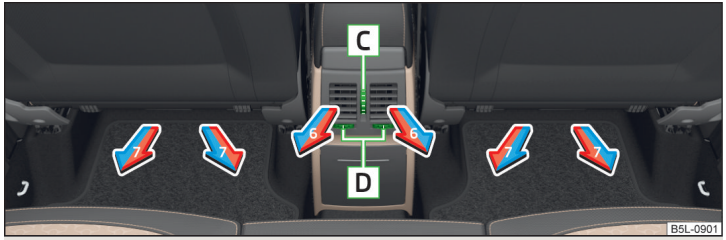


Fig. 118 **Air vents at the rear**

Read and observe ! on page 95 first.

The direction of airflow can be adjusted using the air outlet vents **3**, **4** » Fig. 117 and **6** » Fig. 118 – the outlets can be opened and closed individually.

Setting the airflow direction from the air outlet nozzles **3** and **4** takes place by moving the adjusting units A » Fig. 117 in the desired direction.

Setting the airflow direction from the air outlet nozzles **6** takes place by turning the controller C or. D » Fig. 118 in the desired direction.

› To **open / close** the air outlet nozzles **3** and **4** the Turn the controller B into position / **0** » Fig. 117.
› To **open / close** the air outlet nozzles **6**, C turn the controller between the end positions / in the final position » Fig. 118.

Depending on the setting for air distribution, the air will flow from the following air vents.

Set the direction of the air outlet	Air vents » Fig. 117 and » Fig. 118
/	1. 2. 4
	1. 2. 4. 5. 7
	3. 4. 6
	4. 5. 7

CAUTION

Do not cover the air vents - the air distribution could be compromised.

Note

The air outlet vents **6** » Fig. 118 are only fitted on vehicles with the higher centre console.

Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Switch on / off 99
System settings 100
Remote control 100

The **aux. heating** heats the vehicle interior as well as the engine. For heating, fuel is consumed from the fuel tank.

The **auxiliary ventilation** enables fresh air to flow into the vehicle interior with the engine switched off, whereby the interior temperature is effectively decreased (e.g. with the vehicle parked in the sun).

The aux. heating (aux. heating and ventilation) (referred to just as aux. heating in the following) ensures the heating / ventilation depending on the setting of the air conditioning and the air outlet vents before switching off the ignition.

WARNING

- The auxiliary heating must never be operated in closed rooms (e.g. garages) – There is a risk of poisoning!
- The auxiliary heating must not be allowed to run during refuelling – risk of fire.
- The exhaust pipe of the auxiliary heating is located on the underside of the vehicle. If you want to use the auxiliary heating, do not park the car in places where the exhaust fumes can come into contact with flammable materials such as dry grass, undergrowth, leaves, spilled fuel etc. - risk of fire.

CAUTION

The air inlet in front of the windscreen must be free (e.g. of ice, snow or leaves) to ensure that the auxiliary heating operates properly.

Note

- The aux. heating only switches the blower on, if it has achieved a coolant temperature of approx. 50 °C.
- In the engine compartment, water vapour may form during the operation of the aux. heating.

Switch on / off



Fig. 119 **Button for directly switching the operating part of the manual air conditioning/Climatronic on/off**

Read and observe and on page 99 first.

Functional requirements of the aux. heating.

✓ The charge state of the vehicle battery is sufficient.

✓ The fuel supply is adequate (the warning light is not illuminated in the instrument cluster).

Direct switching on/off

The aux. heating can be **directly** switched on or off at any time using the button » Fig. 119 on the operating part of the air-conditioning system, or the Climatronic or via the radio remote control » page 100.

Automatic on / off

▸ Over a set and activated preset time in the MAXI DOTDisplay.

▸ According to the environmental conditions.

If the auxiliary heating has not already been switched off, it switches off automatically after the running time set in the **Running time** menu.

Switching off the auxiliary heating takes place automatically when there is a lack of fuel (warning light in the instrument cluster lights up).

After switching off the system, the coolant pump and the aux. heating will continue running a little while longer in order to burn the remaining fuel in the heating.

For vehicles with gasoline engines, the automatic switching on and off of the heater can be disabled in a specialist workshop.

System settings

Read and observe ! and ! on page 99 first.

The following menu items can be selected from the **Aux. heating** menu item in the MAXI DOT display (depending on the vehicle equipment).

- **Day of the wk.** - set the current day of the week
- **Running time** - Set the required running time in 5 minute increments. The running time can be 10 to 60 minutes.
- **Mode** - Set the desired heating/ventilation mode
- **Starting time 1, Starting time 2, Starting time 3** - for each pre-set time, the day and the time (hour and minute) can be set for switching on the auxiliary heating. An empty position can be found between Sunday and Monday when selecting the day. If this empty position is selected, the activation is performed without taking into account the day.
- **Activate** - Activate pre-set mode
- **Deactivate** - Deactivate pre-set mode
- **Factory setting.** - Restore factory setting
- **Back** - return to main menu.

Only one programmed pre-set time can be active.

The last programmed pre-set time remains active.

After the auxiliary heating activates at the set time, it is necessary to pre-set a time again.

If the pre-set menu is closed by selecting the **Back** menu item or if no changes are made on the display for more than 10 seconds, the set values are stored, but the pre-set time is not activated.

An indicator light on the button is illuminated when the system is running.

The system in operation switches off on expiration of the operating duration or can be deactivated earlier by pressing the direct on/off button or by using the radio remote control.

Remote control

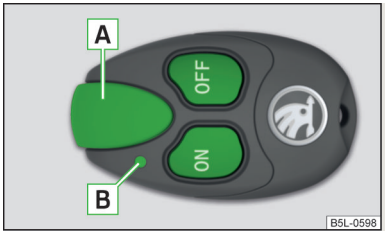


Fig. 120
Radio remote control

Read and observe ! and ! on page 99 first.

Description of the remote control » Fig. 120

- A Aerial
- B Warning light
- **ON** Switch on the auxiliary heating
- **OFF** Switch off the auxiliary heating

To switch the remote control on or off, hold the remote control vertically, with the aerial B » Fig. 120 pointing upwards. The antenna must not be covered with the fingers or the palm of the hand during this process.

The auxiliary heating can only be switched on/off safely using the remote control if the distance between the radio remote control and the vehicle is at least 2 m.

Display warning light B	Meaning
Lights up green for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched on.
Lights up red for 2 seconds.	The auxiliary heating has been switched off.
Slowly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The ignition signal was not received.
Quickly flashes green for 2 seconds.	The aux. heating is blocked, e.g. because the tank is nearly empty or there is a fault in the aux. heating.
Flashes red for 2 seconds.	The switch off signal was not received.

Display warning light B	Meaning
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was received.
Lights up orange for 2 seconds, then flashes green or red.	The battery is weak, however the switching on or off signal was not received.
Flashes orange for 5 seconds.	The battery is discharged, however the switching on or off signal was not received.

Replace the battery » page 166.

CAUTION

- The remote control must be protected against moisture, severe shocks and direct sunlight - there is a risk of damage to the remote control.
- The range of the remote control with a charged battery is a few hundred metres (depending on obstructions between the remote control and the vehicle, weather conditions, the battery condition etc.).

Driving

Starting-off and Driving

Starting and stopping the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock ____ 102
Switch on/off ignition ____ 103
Starting / stopping the engine ____ 103
Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button ____ 104

Depending on equipment fitted, it is possible to switch the ignition on/off and start/stop the engine with the **key in the ignition** or using the **starter button**.

WARNING

- Never switch off the engine before the vehicle is stationary – There is a risk of accident!
- While driving with the engine stopped the ignition must always be switched on. Otherwise, the steering may lock - There is a risk of an accident!
- Do not withdraw the ignition key from the ignition lock until the vehicle has come to a stop » page 107, *Parking*. Otherwise, the steering may lock - danger of an accident!
- Never leave the vehicle unattended with the engine running - there is a risk of theft etc!
- Never (e.g. in garages) run the engine in a closed place - there is a risk of poisoning and death!

CAUTION

- Only start the engine when the engine and the vehicle are stationary - there is a risk of starter and engine damage!
- Do not push-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine and the catalytic converter! The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid.
- On vehicles with the starter button, pay attention to where the key is located. The system can recognize the valid key, even if it has been accidentally left on the vehicle roof - there is danger of loss or damage to the key!

Note

Do not warm up the engine while the vehicle is stationary. If possible, start your journey as soon as the engine has started. Through this, the engine reaches its operating temperature faster.

Electronic immobiliser and steering lock

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

The electronic immobilizer (hereafter referred to as immobilizer) makes the theft or unauthorised use of your vehicle more difficult.

Immobilizer

The immobilizer allows the engine to start provided an original vehicle key only is used.

Malfunction of the immobilizer

If a component in the immobiliser key fails, it is not possible to start the engine. A corresponding message appears in the display of the instrument cluster to explain the immobiliser is active.

To start, use the other vehicle key or seek help from a specialist garage.

Steering lock - lock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, remove the key and turn the steering wheel until the steering lock engages.
› On vehicles with a **starter button**, switch off the ignition and open the driver's door. If the driver's door is opened and the ignition is switched off afterwards, the steering is only locked automatically after the vehicle has been locked.

Steering lock - unlock

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, insert the key into the ignition and turn on the ignition. If this is not possible, then move the steering wheel slightly back and forth, as a result of which the steering lock should unlock.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, get into the car and close the driver's door. Under certain circumstances, the steering lock can be unlocked only when the ignition is switched on or the engine is started.

WARNING

Never let the vehicle roll with locked steering lock - there is a risk of accident!

Switch on/off ignition

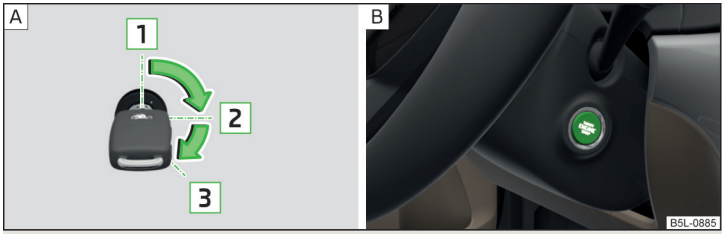


Fig. 121 **Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock / starter button**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Positions of the vehicle key in the ignition lock » Fig. 121 - A

1 Ignition switched off, engine switched off
2 Ignition switched on
3 Starting engine

Switching on /off ignition in vehicles with starter button

› Press the » Fig. 121 - B button, the ignition is turned on / off.

On vehicles with **manual transmission**, the pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, the brake pedal must not be depressed to switch on / off the ignition, otherwise the engine will start.

Starting / stopping the engine

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

Before starting the engine

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, shift gear stick to neutral, depress the clutch pedal and hold it there until the engine starts.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in position **P** or **N** and » !depress the brake pedal until the engine starts.

Starting engine

› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 3 and the engine starts» Fig. 121 *on page 103* A. Then release the key, the engine will start automatically.

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, turn the key to position 1. Repeat the start-up process after 30 s.

› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button briefly » Fig. 121 *on page 103* - B, the motor will start automatically.

On vehicles with **diesel engines** the glow plug warning light goes on during starting. The engine can be started after the indicator light goes out.

Switching off the engine

› Stop the vehicle.
› On vehicles with **ignition lock**, turn the key to position 1 » Fig. 121 *on page 103* A.
› On vehicles with **starter button**, press the button » Fig. 121 *on page 103* - B, the engine and the ignition will be switched off simultaneously.

For vehicles with automatic transmission, the ignition key can only be removed if the selector lever is in position **P**.

Do not switch the engine off immediately at the end of your journey if the engine has been working at high revs over a prolonged period, but leave it to run at an idling speed for about 1 minute. This prevents any possible accumulation of heat when the engine is switched off.

Emergency shutdown of the engine in vehicles with starter button

The system is equipped with a protective device against accidental switching off, the engine can only be shut off while driving in the event of an emergency.

› Keep the knob pressed » Fig. 121 *on page 103* - B or press it twice within 1 second.

After the emergency stop of the engine, the steering lock will remain unlocked.

! CAUTION

When the outdoor temperature is below -10 ° C, the selector lever when starting must always be in **P** mode.

Note

- The engine running noises may be louder at first for a short time after starting the cold engine.
- You should not switch on any major electrical components during the heating period, otherwise the vehicle battery will be drained unnecessarily.
- After switching off the ignition, the radiator fan may (also intermittently) continue to operate for approx. 10 minutes.

Problems with the engine start - vehicles with starter button



Fig. 122
Starting the engine - Press the button with the key

Read and observe ! and ! on page 102 first.

If no engine start is possible and the display of the instrument cluster shows a message that the key could not be detected by the system or there is a system fault, then try to start the engine as follows.

› Press the starter button with the key » Fig. 122.

If the engine does not start, the help of a specialist garage is required.

! CAUTION

The key may not be detected by the system if the battery in the key is running out of charge or the signal fails (strong electromagnetic field) or is shielded (e.g. in an aluminium case).

START-STOPsystem

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation ____ 104
Manually deactivating/activating the system ____ 105

The START STOPsystem (hereinafter referred to as the system) reduces CO_2emissions and harmful emissions, and saves fuel.

If the system determine that the engine is not needed when the vehicle stops (e.g. at the traffic lights), it turns off the engine and starts it again when moving off.

The system function depends on many factors. Some of them are down to the driver, the others are systemic and can neither be influenced nor identified.

Therefore the system may react differently in situations which seem identical from the driver's perspective.

The system is automatically activated **every** time the ignition is switched on (even where this has previously been manually deactivated with the button A OFF).

Note

If the engine has stopped due to the system, the ignition remains on.

Operation



Fig. 123
Prompt in the MAXI DOT display

Vehicles with manual transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt, the shift lever is moved into neutral and the clutch pedal is released.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Vehicles with automatic transmission
The engine is automatically switched **off** as soon as the vehicle comes to a halt and the brake pedal is operated.

The engine is automatically **started** as soon as the brake pedal is released.

Requirements for the system to function correctly
The following conditions must be met for the system to function correctly.
✓ The driver's door is closed.
✓ The driver has fastened the seat belt.
✓ The bonnet is closed.
✓ The driving speed was higher than 4 km.h after the last stop.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

System status
The system status is indicated in the instrument cluster display when stopped.

The engine is automatically switched off; when the vehicle moves off the ignition process will be automatically initiated.

M Ⓐ » Fig. 123

S **START-STOP ACTIVE**

The engine is not automatically switched off.

M Ⓐ » Fig. 123

S **START-STOP NOT POSSIBLE**

The engine does not shut down when the vehicle stops, if e.g. the following applies.
- The engine temperature for the proper function of the system has not yet been reached.
- The charge state of the vehicle battery is too low.
- The current consumption is too high.
- High air conditioning or heating output (high fan speed, big difference between the desired and actual interior temperature).

If the engine has shut down automatically but the system detects that the engine is required to run (e.g. if the brake pedal is pressed repeatedly) then the system automatically starts up the engine.

If there is a **system fault**, the following message will appear in the display of the instrument cluster. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
- If the driver's seat belt is removed for more than 30 seconds or the driver's door is opened after the engine has switched off automatically, the engine will have to be restarted manually.
- No automatic engine shut-down takes place when a vehicle with **automatic transmission** is moving at low speed (e.g. during a traffic jam) and remains stationary after pressing the brake pedal lightly. Automatic engine shutdown takes place if you press the brake pedal down with more force.
- For vehicles with **automatic transmission** there is no automatic engine shut-down when the system detects a manoeuvring action due to a large steering angle.

Manually deactivating/activating the system



Fig. 124
Button for the START-STOP system

› To **deactivate/activate** the system, press the Ⓐ OFF button» Fig. 124.

When the system is deactivated, the symbol Ⓐ OFF in the button lights up.

If the system is turned off, it will be automatically reactivated after turning the ignition off and on.

Note
If the system is deactivated when the engine is turned off automatically, then the automatic start process takes place.

Brakes and parking

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Handbrake 106
Parking 107

The **wear and tear** on the brake pads is dependent on the operating conditions and driving style. In difficult conditions (e.g. urban, sporty driving), the condition of the brakes should be checked between services by a specialist garage.

Brake response can be slower if the brakes **are covered in moisture or, in winter, have a layer of ice or salt on them**. The brakes should be cleaned and dried by applying the brakes many times over » !.

Corrosion on the brake discs and dirt on the brake pads can occur if the vehicle has been parked for a long period and if you do not make much use of the braking system. The brakes are cleaned by applying the brakes several times over » !.

Before negotiating a **long or steep gradient**, reduce speed and shift down a gear. As a result, the braking effect of the engine will be used, reducing the load on the brakes. If, nevertheless, there is a need for additional braking, it should be carried out at intervals.

Emergency braking warning - if it is necessary to brake hard, the system may cause the brake lights to automatically flash, to alert the traffic behind.

New brake pads must first be "run in" because these do not initially have the best possible braking effect. Drive especially carefully for the first 200 km or so.

If the **brake fluid level** is too low, it can cause **faults in the braking system**; the warning light will light up in the instrument cluster » page 34, *Braking system*. If the warning light does not light up, yet the stopping distance is perceived to be longer than before, the driving style should be adapted in view of the unknown cause of the problem, and braking kept to a minimum - seek the help of a specialist garage without delay.

The **brake booster** increases the pressure generated with the brake pedal. The brake booster only operates when the engine is running.

! WARNING

- Greater physical effort is required for braking when the engine is switched off – risk of accident!
- During the braking procedure on a vehicle with manual transmission, when the vehicle is in gear and at low revs, press the clutch pedal. Otherwise, the functionality of the brake system may be impaired – risk of accident!

! WARNING (Continued)

- Do not depress the brake pedal if there is no requirement to slow down. This causes the brakes to overheat and can also result in a longer braking distance and excessive wear - There is a risk of an accident!
- Only brake for the purpose of drying and cleaning the brake discs if the traffic conditions permit this. Do not place any other road users in jeopardy.
- Recommendations for new brake pads should be followed.
- When stopping and parking, the parking brake should always be applied firmly, otherwise the vehicle could move off - There is risk of an accident!
- If a front spoiler, full wheel trim, etc. is mounted retrospectively, it must be ensured that the air supply to the front wheel brakes is not reduced. Otherwise, the front brakes could be in danger of overheating – There is risk of an accident!

Handbrake



Fig. 125
Handbrake

Read and observe ! on page 106 first.

The handbrake secures the vehicle against unwanted movement when stopping and parking.

Apply

› Pull the handbrake lever firmly upwards.

Release

› Pull the handbrake lever up slightly **and at the same time** push in the lock button » Fig. 125 .
› Move the lever right down while pressing the lock button.

The handbrake warning light lights up when the handbrake is applied, provided the ignition is on.

A warning signal sounds if the vehicle is inadvertently driven off with the handbrake applied. The handbrake warning is activated if the vehicle is driven at a speed of over 5 km/h for more than 3 seconds.

WARNING

Disengage the handbrake completely. A handbrake which is only partially disengaged can result in the rear brakes overheating. This can have a negative effect on the operation of the brake system – risk of accident!

Note

Push the armrest cover all the way back to the stop before applying the handbrake» page 73.

Parking

Read and observe ! on page 106 first.

When stopping and parking, look for a place with a suitable surface » !.

Only carry out the activities while parking in the specified order.

› Bring the vehicle to a stop and depress the brake pedal.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission** place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **Manual transmission** select the **1st gear** or the **Reverse gear R**.
› Release the brake pedal.

WARNING

- The exhaust system components can become very hot. Therefore, never stop the vehicle in places where the underside of your vehicle could come into contact with flammable materials (e.g. dry grass, leaves, spilled fuel or the like). - Risk of fire and serious injury can occur!
- When leaving the vehicle, never leave people unattended in the car who could, for example, lock the vehicle or release the brake - There is a risk of accidents and injury!

Manual gear changing and pedals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Manual gear changing 107
Pedals 108

Manual gear changing

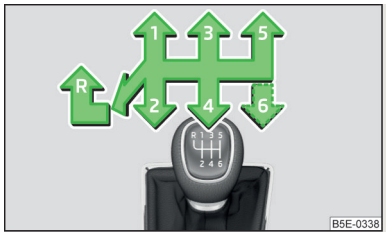


Fig. 126
The shift pattern

The shift pattern for the individual gear positions is shown on the gear lever » Fig. 126.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 41.

Always depress the clutch pedal all the way down. This prevents uneven wear on the clutch.

Reverse gear is engaged

› Stop the vehicle.
› The clutch pedal is fully depressed.
› Switch the gear lever to **N**.
› Push the shift lever downwards fully to the left and then forward into **R**» Fig. 126.

The reversing lights will come on once reverse gear is engaged, provided the ignition is on.

WARNING

Never engage reverse gear when driving – risk of accident!

CAUTION

If not in the process of changing gear, do not leave your hand on the gearshift lever while driving. The pressure from the hand can cause the gearshift mechanism to wear excessively.

Pedals

The operation of the pedals must not be hindered under any circumstances!

Only a floor mat (ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories range) which can be secured to the attachment points should be used in the driver's footwell.

WARNING

There should be no objects in the driver's footwell, otherwise the pedal operation can be impeded -There is a risk of an accident!

Automatic transmission

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Select selector lever position ____ 108
Selector lever lock ____ 109
Manual shifting (Tiptronic) ____ 109
Starting-off and driving ____ 110

The automatic transmission performs an automatic gear change irrespective of the engine load, the operation of the accelerator, the vehicle speed and the selected driving mode.

The modes of the automatic transmission can be adjusted by the driver by means of the selector lever.

WARNING

- Do not accelerate when selecting drive mode prior to moving off - There is a risk of an accident!
- Never move the selector lever to mode **R** or **P** when driving – There is a risk of an accident!

WARNING (Continued)

- If the vehicle stalls, with engine running, in the **D**, **S**, **R** or Tiptronic mode, the vehicle must be prevented from rolling away by means of the brake pedal or the parking brake. Even when the engine is idling, the power transmission is never completely interrupted – the vehicle creeps.
- When leaving the vehicle, the selector lever must always be set to **P**. Otherwise, the vehicle could be set in motion - risk of accident!

CAUTION

If you want to move the selector lever from position **N** to position **D** / **S** whilst driving, the engine must be running at idling speed.

Select selector lever position

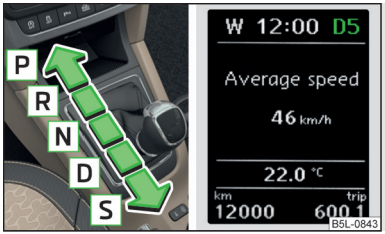


Fig. 127
Selector lever settings / display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

The selector lever can be moved by shifting to one of the following positions » Fig. 127. In some positions you have to push the locking button » page 109.

When the ignition is switched on, the gearbox mode and the currently selected gear are indicated in the display » Fig. 127.

P **Parking** - the position can be set only when the vehicle is at a standstill The drive wheels are mechanically locked.

R **Reverse gear** - the position can only be selected when the vehicle is stationary and the engine is idling

N **Neutral (idle position)** - power transmission to the drive wheels is interrupted

D **Driving forwards** - In mode **D**, the forward gears are automatically changed according to the engine load, accelerator pedal actuation and driving speed

S **Sports mode** - the gear change takes place in the position **S at higher engine speeds** than in mode **D**
Before changing to mode **S** from mode **D**, press the lock button in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 128 *on page 109*.

Selector lever lock



Fig. 128
Shift lock button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

The selector lever is locked in mode **P** and **N** to prevent that the forward driving is selected accidentally, thereby setting the vehicle in motion.

The selector lever is locked only when the vehicle is stationary and at speeds up to 5 km/h.

The selector lever lock is indicated by the illumination of the warning light.

Releasing selector lever from mode P or N (selector lever lock)
› Press the brake pedal and the lock button at the same time in the direction of 1 » Fig. 128 .

To move the selector lever from mode **N** to **D** only the brake pedal must be pressed.

The selector lever is not locked when quickly moving across the position **N** (e.g. from **R** to **D**). This, for example, helps to rock out a vehicle that is stuck, e.g. in a bank of snow. The selector lever lock will engage if the lever is in position **N** for more than approx. 2 seconds without the brake pedal being depressed.

If it is not possible to release the gear selector from mode **P** in the usual manner, then this can be emergency unlocked » page 168.

Note
To switch the selector lever from mode **P** to mode **D/S** or vice versa, move the selector lever quickly. This prevents that you accidentally select mode **R** or **N**.

Manual shifting (Tiptronic)

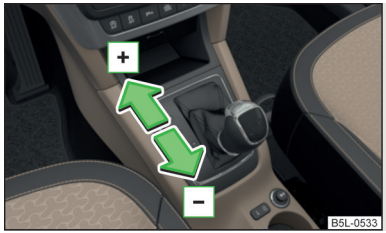


Fig. 129
Selector lever

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Tiptronic mode makes it possible to manually shift gears on the selector lever. This mode can be selected both while stopping and while driving.

Switching to manual shifting using the selector lever
› Push the gear selector from position **D** towards the right, or left in a right-hand drive vehicle. The current gear is maintained.

Gear changing
› To **change up**, tap the selector lever forwards + » Fig. 129.
› To **change down**, tap the selector lever backwards - » Fig. 129.

The currently selected gear is indicated in the display » Fig. 127 *on page 108*.

The gearshift indicator should be observed when changing gear » page 41.

When accelerating, the gearbox automatically shifts up into the higher gear just before the maximum permissible engine speed is reached. If a lower gear is selected, the gearbox does not shift down until there is no risk of the engine overrevving.

Note
It may be beneficial, for example, when travelling downhill, to use manual shifting of gears. Shifting to a lower gear reduces the load on the brakes and hence the wear of the brakes.

Starting-off and driving

Read and observe ! and ! on page 108 first.

Moving off and pausing temporarily
› Firmly depress and hold the brake pedal.
› Start the engine.
› Press the locking button and move the selector lever to the desired position » page 108.
› Release the brake pedal and accelerate.

The selector lever position **N** does not have to be selected when stopping for a short time (e.g. at a crossroads). However, the brake pedal should be depressed, in order to prevent the vehicle from rolling.

Accelerating at maximum speed during the journey (kickdown function)
If the accelerator pedal is depressed while the vehicle is in forward drive mode, the kick-down function is turned on.

The gear change is adjusted accordingly to achieve maximum acceleration.

Driving in neutral ("coasting")[1]
When releasing the accelerator pedal, the vehicle moves without the braking effect of the engine.

Operating conditions
▸ The selector lever is in the **D** position.
▸ In the MAXI DOT display in the menu **Settings** activate the menu item **Coasting** » page 44.
▸ The vehicle is travelling at more than 20 km/h.
▸ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

The gear is automatically inserted again by depressing either the accelerator or brake pedal.

! WARNING
Rapid acceleration (e.g. on slippery roads) can lead to a loss of control over the vehicle – There is a risk of an accident!

[1] This function is only valid for some engines.

Running in and economical driving

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Running in the engine 110
Tips on economical driving 110

Running in the engine

During the first 1 500 km, the driving style is decisive for successful the running in process is.

During the first 1 000 km, the engine should not be charged with more than 3/4 of the maximum permitted engine revs and without the trailer.

From about **1 000 to 1 500 km**, the engine can be pushed up to the maximum permitted engine speed.

Tips on economical driving

Fuel consumption depends on the driving style, road and weather conditions, and similar such factors.

For an economical driving style, the following instructions must be observed.
▸ Avoid unnecessary acceleration and braking.
▸ Engage the recommended gear » page 41.
▸ Avoid full throttle and high speeds.
▸ Reduce idling.
▸ Avoid short distances.
▸ Ensure the correct tyre inflation pressure is maintained » page 152.
▸ Avoid unnecessary ballast.
▸ Remove the roof rack before driving if it is not needed.
▸ Only turn on electrical consumers (e.g. seat heating) for as long as necessary.
▸ Briefly ventilate before turning on the cooling system, do not use the cooling system with the windows open.
▸ Do not leave windows open at high speeds.

Avoiding damage to your vehicle

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Driving Tips 111
Driving through water 111

Driving Tips

Only drive on roads and terrain that are appropriate to the vehicle parameters » page 177, *Technical data*.

The driver is always responsible for deciding whether the vehicle can cope with the conditions and the terrain.

When travelling off paved roads, we recommend activating the OFF ROAD mode » page 114.

WARNING

- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions. Too high a speed or an erroneous manoeuvre may cause serious injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Combustible objects such as dry leaves or twigs caught under the base of the vehicle could ignite on hot vehicle parts - risk of fire!

CAUTION

- Pay attention to the ground clearance of the vehicle! When driving over objects which are larger than the ground clearance, the vehicle can get damaged.
- Any objects that get trapped under the vehicle floor must be removed as soon as possible. These items can cause damage to the vehicle (e.g. to parts of the fuel or brake system).

Driving through water

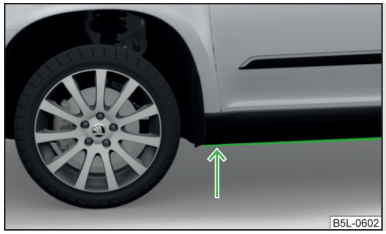


Fig. 130
Maximum permissible water level when driving through water

The following must be observed to avoid damage to the vehicle when driving through bodies of water (e.g. flooded roads).

› Therefore determine the depth of the water before driving through bodies of water. The water level must not go above the web of the lower beam » Fig. 130.
› Drive at no more than walking pace, otherwise a wave may form in front of the vehicle, which could cause the water to enter into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine).
› Never stop in the water, do not reverse and do not switch the engine off.

CAUTION

- If water gets into the vehicle's systems (e.g. the air intake system for the engine) it can cause serious damage to the vehicle!
- Oncoming vehicles can generate water waves which can exceed the permissible water level for your vehicle.
- Do not drive through salt water, as the salt can cause corrosion. An vehicle coming into contact with salt water is to be thoroughly rinsed with fresh water.

Assist systems

General information

WARNING

- The assistance systems only serve to support and do not relieve the driver of the responsibility for driving the vehicle.
- The increased safety provision, as well as the increased occupant protection provided by the assistance systems must not tempt you to take risks - risk of accident!
- Adjust the speed and driving style to the current visibility, weather, road and traffic conditions.
- The assistance systems have physical and system-related limitations. For this reason, the driver may experience some undesired or delayed system responses in certain situations. You should therefore always be alert and ready to intervene!
- Only activate, deactivate or set the assistance systems so that you have the car fully under control in every traffic situation - risk of accident!

Braking and stabilisation systems

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Stability Control (ESC) 112
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 112
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 112
Traction control (TCS) 113
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 113
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 113
Brake Assist (HBA) 113
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 113
Trailer stabilization system (TSA) 114

The brake and stabilization systems are automatically activated each time the ignition is switched on, unless otherwise indicated.

The error display is in Chapter » page 33, *Warning lights*.

WARNING

The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.

Stability Control (ESC)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

The ESC improves vehicle stability when driving at the limit (e.g. if the vehicle starts to skid) by braking individual wheels to maintain the desired direction.

If there is a TCS intervention, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

Anti-lock braking system (ABS)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

ABS prevents the wheels locking when braking. Thus helping the driver to maintain control of the vehicle.

The intervention of the ABS is noticeable from the **pulsating movements of the brake pedal** which is accompanied by noises.

When the ABS system is active, do not brake periodically or reduce the pressure on the brake pedal.

Engine drag torque control (MSR)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

MSR counteracts the tendency of the drive wheels to lock during downshifts or sudden deceleration (e.g. on icy or an otherwise slippery road surface).

If the drive wheels should lock, then the engine speed is automatically increased. This reduces the braking effect of the engine and the wheels can rotate freely again.

Traction control (TCS)



Fig. 131 **Vehicle with ESC / vehicle without ESC**

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

TCS prevents the spinning of the wheels of the driven axle. TCS reduces the drive power transmitted to the wheels in the case of slipping wheels. Thus, for example, driving on road surfaces with low grip is made easier.

During a TCS intervention, the indicator light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The **deactivation/activation** of TCS can be carried out, depending on equipment, in one of the following ways.
- By pressing the » Fig. 131 button.
- By pressing the ASR OFF » Fig. 131 button.

With **deactivation**, the warning light lights **up** in the instrument cluster and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

With **activation**, the warning light is extinguished and an appropriate message is displayed in the instrument cluster.

The TCS should normally always be enabled. The system should be deactivated only in the following situations, for example.
- When driving with snow chains.
- When driving in deep snow or on a very loose surface.
- When it is necessary to "rock" a car free when it has become stuck.

Electronic Differential Lock (EDL)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

EDL prevents the turning of the respective wheel of the driven axle. EDL brakes a spinning wheel if required and transfers the drive power force to the other drive wheel. Driving becomes easier on road surfaces with different traction under each wheel of the driven axle.

EDL switches off automatically to avoid excessive heat generation on the brake of the wheel being braked. Once the brakes have cooled down, there is an automatic re-activation of EDL.

Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

In critical situations, the DSR provides the driver with a steering recommendation in order to stabilise the vehicle. DSR is activated, for example, on the right and left vehicle side when braking sharply on different road surfaces.

Brake Assist (HBA)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

The HBA increases the braking effect and helps to reduce the braking distance.

The HBA is activated by very quick operation of the brake pedal. In order to achieve the shortest possible braking distance, the brake pedal must be applied firmly until the vehicle has come to a standstill.

The HBA function is automatically deactivated when the brake pedal is released.

Hill Start Assist (HHC)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

When moving off on a gradient, HHC allows you to move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator pedal without the vehicle rolling downhill.

The vehicle is braked by the system for about 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal.

The HHC is active on gradients upwards up 5% if the driver door is closed. HHC is only ever active on slopes when in forward or reverse start off.

Trailer stabilization system (TSA)

Read and observe ! on page 112 first.

The TSA helps the combination stable in situations where the trailer sways and then the whole trailer combination.

TSA brakes the individual wheels of the towing vehicle in order to damp the rocking motion of the entire vehicle combination.

The following conditions are required for the correct TSA function.

- ✓ The trailer was shipped from the factory or purchased from the ŠKODA genuine accessories.
- ✓ The trailer is electrically connected to the towing vehicle via the trailer socket.
- ✓ The TCS is activated.
- ✓ The speed is greater than 60 km/h.

Further information » page 126, *Towing device and trailer*.

OFF ROAD Mode

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 114
Hill Descent Assistant 115
TCSOFF ROAD 115
EDS OFF ROAD 115
ABS OFF ROAD 115
Start-Off Assistant 116

The OFF ROAD mode includes several features that help to overcome difficult navigable routes when travelling on non-paved roads.

But even with OFF ROAD mode activated, your vehicle is never a true SUV.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.
- A lack of fuel can cause irregular engine running or cause the engine to shut down. This would lead the OFF ROAD mode to lose its effectiveness - risk of accident!

CAUTION

- The OFF ROAD mode is not designed for the use on common roads.
- All four wheels must be fitted with the same tyres approved by the ŠKODA AUTO to ensure theOFF ROAD mode operates correctly.

Operation



Fig. 132
OFF ROAD button

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

We recommend that you activate the OFF ROAD mode for every trip on non-paved roads.

› To **activate**, press the  » Fig. 132 button.

The symbol in the button comes on.

› To **deactivate** press the button » Fig. 132 or switch off the ignition.

The symbol in the button is no longer illuminated.

So that an engagement of the OFF ROAD mode can take place, the following conditions must be met.

- ✓ The OFF ROAD mode is enabled.
- ✓ The vehicle is moving at a speed of less than 30 km/h.
- ✓ The warning light illuminates in the instrument cluster.

The following functions are integrated in the OFF ROAD mode.

- Downhill Drive Support » page 115.
- TCS OFF ROAD » page 115.
- EDL OFF ROAD » page 115.
- ABS OFF ROAD » page 115.
- Start-Off Assistant » page 116.

Note

If the engine stalls while driving and is started again within 30 seconds, then OFF ROAD mode will be automatically activated.

Hill Descent Assistant

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

The hill descent assistant (hereinafter referred to as assistant), with its automatic braking action on all wheels, ensures a constant speed is maintained on a steep slope when driving forwards and reversing.

During an intervention of the Assistants, the warning light flashes in the instrument cluster.

The assistant is automatically engaged under the following conditions.

- ✓ The engine is running.
- ✓ For vehicles with **Manual transmission** the shift lever is in the neutral position and or the 1st, 2nd, 3rd gear, or reverse gear is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the R, N, D, S position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The downhill gradient is at least 10 % (when driving over sleepers, the limit can briefly drop to 8 %).
- ✓ Neither the accelerator nor the brake pedal is operated.

Driving speed

Initiate the downhill decent at a reasonable speed up to 30 km / h the hill descent assist maintains this speed when driving downhill constant.

The assistant can maintain constant speed of about 2 - 30 km / h.

If a forwards or reverse gear is engaged for vehicles with **Manual transmission**, the speed must be high enough to avoid stalling the engine.

By pressing the accelerator or brake pedal, the speed can be increased or reduced. This is true even if the shift lever is in the neutral position and the selector lever in the N position. The engagement of the assistant is resumed after the pedal is released.

WARNING

For the correct operation of the assistant the road surface must be sufficiently adherent. The assistant cannot properly fulfil its function on slushy soil due to physical reasons (e.g. ice or mud). - there is a risk of an accident!

Note

During an active intervention of the assistant, the brake lights do not light up.

TCSOFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

The ASR OFF ROAD makes starting and driving on an unpaved surface easier as it partially allows wheel-spin.

Note

When disabled, the TCS » page 113 OFF ROAD mode works without the support of the TCS OFF ROAD.

EDS OFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

The EDS supports OFF ROAD vehicle traction when driving on a surface with different grip under the drive wheels or when driving over bumps.

A spinning wheel or wheels are braked earlier and with more force than with the intervention of the standard EDS system.

ABS OFF ROAD

Read and observe and on page 114 first.

The ABS OFF ROAD supports the driver when braking on an unpaved surface such as gravel, snow, etc.

The system generated by a controlled locking of the wheels braked wheel before a "wedge" of piled material, which shortens the braking distance.

The system is only available, if the front wheels are in the straight-ahead position.

The system operates at speeds of up to 50 km/h.

Start-Off Assistant [1]

Read and observe ! and ! on page 114 first.

The Start-Off assistant assists the driver when setting off, such as on a steep slope or on a slippery surface. When the driver presses the accelerator, the maximum engine speed is electronically limited so that a gentle approach is possible.

Parking aid (ParkPilot)

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Function 116
Display in the Infotainment display 117
Activation / deactivation 118

The parking aid (hereinafter referred to as system) draws attention via acoustic signals or the Infotainment display when manoeuvring around obstacles in the vicinity of the vehicle.

! WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.
- Moving persons or objects may not be recognized by the system sensors.
- Under certain circumstances, surfaces of certain objects and types of clothing cannot reflect the system signals. There is a danger that such objects or people may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! WARNING (Continued)

- External noise sources may affect the signals of the system sensors. There is a danger that obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.
- Before reversing, you should satisfy yourself that there are no small obstacle, such as a rock, thin post etc., in front or behind your vehicle. Such obstacles may not be recognised by the system sensors.

! CAUTION

- Keep the system sensors » Fig. 133 *on page 116* clean, snow-and ice-free and do not cover with any objects of any kind, otherwise the system functioning may be impaired.
- In adverse weather conditions (heavy rain, water vapour, very low or high temperatures, etc.), the functioning of the system may be impaired - "incorrect recognition of obstacles".
- Accessories additionally installed on the vehicle rear, such as bicycle carriers, can impair the system function.

Function



Fig. 133 **Installation location of the sensors on the left side of the vehicle: front / rear**

[1] Only for vehicles with a petrol engine and manual transmission.

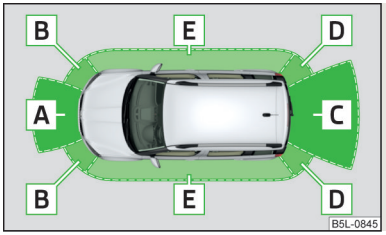


Fig. 134
Sampled areas and range of the sensors

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

The system uses ultrasound waves to calculate the distance between the bumper and an obstacle. The ultrasonic sensors are, depending on vehicle equipment, located in the back or in the front bumper » Fig. 133.

Depending on the equipment, the following system variants are possible » Fig. 134.

- Variant 1: warns of obstacles in the areas C, D.
- Variant 2: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D.
- Variant 3: warns of obstacles in the areas A, B, C, D, E.

Approximate range of sensors (in cm)

Area » Fig. 134	Version 1 (4 sensors)	Version 2 (8 sensors)	Version 3 (12 sensors)
A	-	120	120
B	-	60	60
C	160	160	160
D	60	60	60
E	-	-	60

Audible signals
The interval between the acoustic signals becomes shorter as the clearance is reduced. At a distance of approx. 30 cm, a continuous tone starts to sound - danger zone. **From this moment do not continue to move towards the obstacle!**

Towing a trailer
When towing, or when another accessory is connected to the trailer socket only the areas A and B » Fig. 134 are active in the system.

Note

- If with **Version 3** vehicles not all fields around the vehicle are active after activation the vehicle should be moved forwards or backwards.
- The signal tones for front obstacle recognition are factory-set to be higher than for rear obstacle recognition.
- The sound of the park-assist can be adjusted via the MAXI DOT display in the **Assistants** menu option » page 45.

Display in the Infotainment display

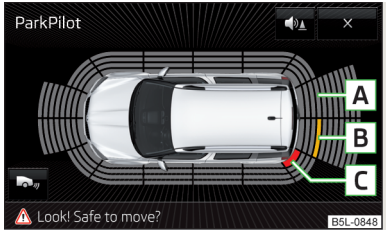


Fig. 135
Display

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Functional interfaces and obstacle warning » Fig. 135

- Change to rear-view camera display .
- ✖ Switching off park assistant display.
- / Switching audible parking signals on/off.
- Message: **Look! Safe to move?**
- A An area without detected obstacles is shown as a transparent segment.
- B An obstacle which is currently outside of the collision area is shown by the yellow segment.
- C An obstacle in the collision zone is shown as an orange-coloured segment. Stop moving in the direction of the obstacle!

Activation / deactivation



Fig. 136
System key (option 2, 3)

Read and observe ! and ! on page 116 first.

Activation
The activation of the system is initiated when the reverse gear is engaged, or, with vehicles with the **variant 2 and 3** , also by pressing the P button » Fig. 136 button.

When activating, an alarm sounds and the symbol P illuminates in the button.

Deactivation
On vehicles with **Version 1**, the system can be deactivated by moving out of reverse gear.

For vehicles with **version 2 and 3**, the system is automatically deactivated by pressing the P button or at a speed above 15 km/h (the P symbol in the button goes out).

Fault display
If a warning signal sounds for 3 seconds after activating the system and there is no obstacle close to your car, this indicates a system fault. The fault is also indicated by the symbol P flashing in the button. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note
The system can only be activated with the P button at a speed of below 15 km/h.

Reversing camera

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 119
Guidelines and function keys 119

The rear view camera (hereinafter referred to as system) helps the driver when parking and manoeuvring by displaying the area behind the vehicle in the Infotainment display (hereinafter referred to as display).

WARNING
- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.
- The camera may not be soiled or obscured, otherwise the system function will be significantly affected - there is a risk of an accident. For information on cleaning » page 138, *Exterior car care*.

CAUTION
- The camera image is distorted by contrast with eyesight. The display is therefore only of limited use for estimating distances to following vehicles.
- Some items, such as thin columns, chain link fences or lattice, may not be represented adequately in terms of display resolution.
- In a crash or damage the vehicle's rear camera can possibly deviate from the correct position. If this is the case, have the sensor checked by a specialist garage.

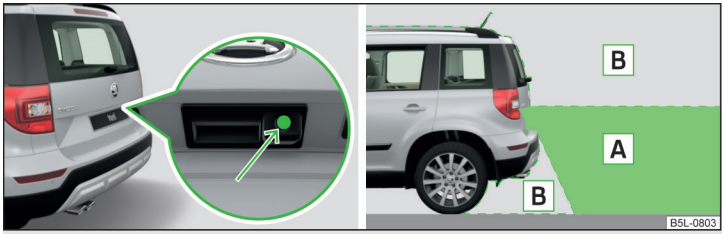


Fig. 137 **Installation location of the camera / scanned area behind the vehicle**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 118 first.

The camera for capturing the area behind the vehicle is in the grip of the boot lid » Fig. 137.

Area behind the vehicle » Fig. 137

A Detection range of the camera
B Area outside the detection range of the camera

The system can assist the driver when parking and manoeuvring under the following basic conditions.

✓ The ignition is switched on.
✓ The reverse gear is engaged.[1)]
✓ The luggage compartment lid is completely closed.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 15 km/h.
✓ The area behind the vehicle is clearly visible.
✓ The selected parking / manoeuvring area is clear and even.

Note

▪ The display can be interrupted by pressing the symbol button P » Fig. 136 *on page 118*.
▪ After disengaging the reverse gear, automatic display of the parking aid is carried out (variant 2, 3) » page 116.

[1)] The area behind the vehicle can be displayed for a few seconds more after disengaging the reverse gear.

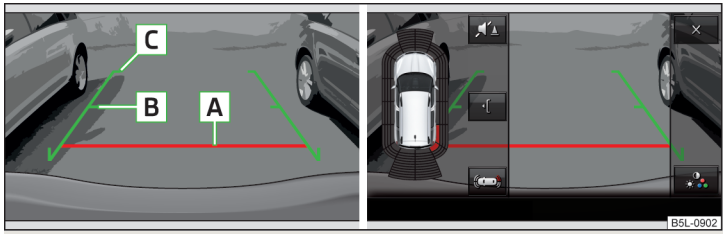


Fig. 138 **Infotainment display: Orientation lines / functional interfaces**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 118 first.

Orientation lines are shown along with the monitored area behind the vehicle in the display.

Distance of the orientation lines behind the vehicle » Fig. 138

A The distance is about 40 cm (safety distance limit).
B The distance is about 100 cm.
C The distance is about 200 cm.

The distance may vary slightly depending on the load of the vehicle and the road inclination.

The distance between the side lines corresponds approximately to the vehicle width including mirrors.

Functional interfaces » Fig. 138

✖ / ⮌ Depending on the Infotainment Type: Turns the display of the area behind the vehicle off
Display settings - brightness, contrast, colour
/ Switching on/off audible parking signals
/ Switching on/off the reduced park assistance display
Change to park assistance display

CAUTION

The objects shown in the display can be closer or even further away than they appear. This is especially the case in the following situations.

- Protruding objects, such as the rear of a truck and the like.
- When driving from a horizontal surface into a slope or a depression.
- When driving from a slope or a depression onto a horizontal surface.

Park Assist

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Functioning 120
Parking space search 121
Parking 122
Departing from a parallel parking space 122
Automatic brake assist 123
Malfunctions 123

Park Assist (hereinafter referred to as system) helps drivers park in suitable parallel and perpendicular parking places or also to manoeuvre out of parallel parking spaces.

The system takes over the steering movements **only** when parking or leaving a parking space. The driver operates the brake, accelerator or clutch pedal and the shift / selector lever.

The state in which the steering wheel is operated by the system, is referred to as **parking operation.**

The Park Assist is an extension of the parking aid » page 116 and operates on the basis of data collected by the ultrasonic sensors.

For this reason, the chapter on the parking aid is to be read carefully and the safety notes are to be observed.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, in section *General information*.
- During the parking process, the system automatically performs rapid steering movements. While it is doing so, do not place your hands between the steering wheel – risk of injury!
- During a parking manoeuvre on loose or slippery surfaces (gravel, snow, ice, etc.) you may stray from the calculated road. It is therefore recommended that you do not use the system in such situations.

CAUTION

The correct evaluation of the parking space and the parking procedure depends on the circumference of the wheels on the vehicle.

- The system only works correctly if the vehicle is fitted with the wheel size approved by ŠKODA AUTO.
- Abstain from using the system when the vehicle is fitted with snow chains or a temporary spare wheel.
- If wheels other than those approved by ŠKODA AUTO are fitted, the resulting position of the vehicle in the parking space can differ slightly. This can be avoided by readjusting the system at a specialist garage.

CAUTION

If other vehicles are parked behind or on the curb, the system can drive your vehicle over the kerb or up to the kerb - there is a risk of damage to the wheels. If necessary, intervene in good time.

Note

- We recommend performing the parking at a safe speed to about 5 km/h.
- The parking procedure can be stopped at any time by pressing the P button » Fig. 139 *on page 121* button or by a steering intervention.

Functioning

Read and observe and on page 120 first.

The system support is provided in the following manner.

- While the parking space search is going on, a measurement and evaluation of the parking space size is completed.
- Suitable parking spaces are shown in the display of the instrument cluster (hereinafter only in the display).

▸ The display shows instructions and information before the start and during the parking.
▸ Based on the calculated road surface, the front wheels will be automatically rotated during the parking.

Conditions for the system function
The system can look for a parking space only if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The system is activated.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 40 km/h.
✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 20 km/h.
✓ The distance to a number of parked vehicles is approximately 0.5-1.5 m.
✓ TCS is activated » page 113.

The system can only carry out the parking procedure if the following basic conditions are met.

✓ The vehicle is travelling at less than 7 km/h.
✓ The parking procedure takes less than 6 minutes.
✓ There is no driver intervention in the automatic steering operation.
✓ TCS is activated » page 113.
✓ The TCS does not engage.
✓ No trailer or other accessory is connected to the trailer socket.

Activation/deactivation
The system can be activated/deactivated by pressing the P button» Fig. 139 *on page 121*- A.

When the system is activated, the symbol P illuminates.

Parking space search

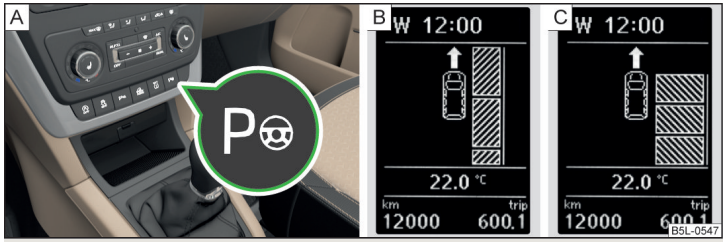


Fig. 139 **System button / display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The system searches for a parking space in a number of parallel and transverse parked vehicles on the passenger or driver's side.

Search for a parking space parallel to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of parallel parked vehicles.
› **Press** the button once P » Fig. 139 - A.

The display shows the following - B.

Search for a parking space traverse to the roadway
› Slowly drive past a row of traverse parked vehicles.
› Press the button **twice** P » Fig. 139 - A .

The display shows the following - C

Change sides for the parking
The system will automatically search for a parking space on the passenger side.

Activate the turn signal on the driver's side if you wish to look fro a parking space on this side of the road. The display changes and the system searches for a parking space on the driver's side.

Note
If the symbol (km / h) is shown in the display while you are looking for a parking space, the vehicle speed should be reduced below 40 km / hr (parallel parking) or below 20 km / hr (Transverse parking).

Parking

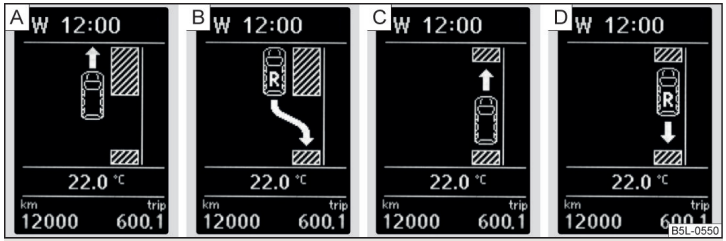


Fig. 140 **Display**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The system supports the driver when reverse parking in the parking space found in a number of traverse and parallel parked vehicles.

Display » Fig. 140

A Parking space recognised with the information to drive on
B Parking space recognised with the information to reverse
C Note to drive on to the parking space
D Note to reverse to the parking space

Parking manoeuvre

The parking space found is shown in the display » Fig. 140 - A.

› Continue driving forwards until B appears in the display.
› Stop and ensure that the vehicle does not continue to move forward until the parking procedure starts.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.
› As soon as the following message is shown in the display: **Steering int. active. Monitor area around veh.!**, let go of the steering wheel. The steering will be taken over by the system.
› Observe the direct vicinity of the vehicle and reverse carefully.

If necessary, the parking procedure can be continued with further steps.

› If the arrow in the information display is flashing to the front C, engage 1 gear or move the selector lever into the position **D**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully drive forwards.
› If the backwards arrow is flashing in the display - D, select reverse gear again or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The display shows the icon (brake pedal).

› Depress the brake pedal and wait until the steering wheel automatically rotates into the required position, the symbol goes out.
› Carefully move backwards.

You can repeat these steps several times in succession.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

Departing from a parallel parking space

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

The system supports the driver when leaving a parking space of a parallel parking space.

Leaving a parking space process

› Press the symbol key » Fig. 139 *on page 121*.

The following message is displayed: **PARK ASSIST Turn on turn signal and select reverse gear.**

› Activate the turn signal for side of the vehicle where the parking space is out of which you wish to manoeuvre.
› Select reverse gear or move the selector lever into position **R**.

The further procedure is analogous to that for reverse parking.

› Follow the system instructions shown in the display.

As soon as the parking procedure is complete, an audible signal sounds and the following message appears in the display.

If the parking space is too small, it is not possible to use the system to leave the parking space. A corresponding message is shown in the information cluster display.

Automatic brake assist

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

Automatic brake assist when speeding
If a velocity of 7 km / h is exceeded during the parking manoeuvre for the first time, the speed will be automatically reduced by the system to less than 7 km / h. This prevents the parking manoeuvre from aborting.

Automatic emergency braking
If the system detects a risk of collision during parking, automatic emergency braking takes place to prevent a collision.

The parking is terminated by the emergency braking.

! CAUTION
The automatic emergency braking is not triggered by the system when the parking process stops due to the speed of 7 km / hr being exceeded!

Malfunctions

Read and observe ! and ! on page 120 first.

If, for some unknown reason, the system is not available, an appropriate message appears in the display of the instrument cluster.

System unavailable
If the system is not available because the vehicle has a fault, a message appears concerning the unavailability. Seek help from a specialist garage.

System fault
In the case of a system fault, an error message appears. Seek help from a specialist garage.

Cruise Control System

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Operation 123
Operation description 124

The Cruise Control System (CCS) maintains a set speed without you having to actuate the accelerator pedal. The state where the CCS maintains the speed is referred to hereinafter as the **control**.

! WARNING
The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.

Operation

Read and observe ! on page 123 first.

Basic requirements for start of control
- ✓ The CCS is activated.
- ✓ On vehicles with a **manual transmission**, the second gear or higher is engaged.
- ✓ On vehicles with an **automatic transmission**, the selector lever is in the **D/S** position or in the Tiptronic position.
- ✓ The current speed is higher than 20 km/h.

This, however, is only possible to the extent permitted by the engine output and braking power of the vehicle.

! WARNING
If the engine output or engine braking effect is insufficient to maintain the set speed, the driver must assume control of the accelerator and brake pedals!

Operation description

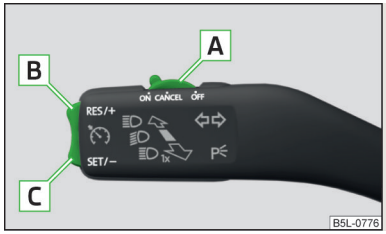


Fig. 141
Cruise control system controls

Read and observe ! on page 123 first.

Overview of the CCS controls » Fig. 141

A	**ON**	Activate CCS (control deactivated)
	CANCEL	Interrupt control (sprung position)
	OFF	Deactivate CCS (delete set speed)
B	**RES/+**	Take control again[a] / Increase speed
C	**SET/–**	Launch control / reduce speed

[a] If no speed is set the current speed is adopted.

Once the controls are activated, the CCS maintains the vehicle at the set speed; the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

After the interruption in control, the stored speed can be resumed by pressing the B button.

Controls are automatically interrupted if any of the following occur.
- ▸ By pressing the brake or clutch pedal.
- ▸ When one of the brake assist systems (e.g. ESC) intervenes.
- ▸ Through an airbag deployment.

! WARNING
- ▪ Always deactivate the cruise control system after use to prevent the system being switched on unintentionally.
- ▪ Control may only be resumed if the set speed is not too high for the current traffic conditions.

Note
During control, speed can be increased by pressing the accelerator pedal. Releasing the accelerator pedal will cause the speed to drop again to the set speed.

Fatigue detection

The fatigue detection system (hereinafter referred to as system) recommends the driver takes a break from driving when driver fatigue can be detected due to the driver's steering behaviour.

From the starting of the journey, the system evaluates the steering behaviour at speeds 65-200 km/h. If, while driving, there have been changes in the steering behaviours that are evaluated by the system as indicating possible fatigue, a break recommendation is issued.

Conditions under which a break from driving is detected by the system
- ▸ The vehicle is stopped and the ignition switched off.
- ▸ The vehicle is stopped, the seat belt removed and the driver's door opened.
- ▸ The vehicle is stopped for more than 15 minutes.

If none of these conditions are met or if the driving style is not changed, the system recommends a driving break again after 15 minutes.

The system can be activated / deactivated in MAXI DOT display » page 45.

Pause recommendation
The icon appears and the following message for a few seconds in the display of the instrument cluster and a message about the detected fatigue. An audible signal is also emitted.

! WARNING
- ▪ The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, ! in section *General information*.
- ▪ For the driving ability is always the driver's responsibility. Never drive if you feel tired.
- ▪ The system may not detect all cases where a break is needed.
- ▪ Therefore, take regular, sufficient breaks during long trips.
- ▪ There will be no system warning during the so-called micro-sleep.

Note

- In some situations, the system may evaluate the driving incorrectly and thus mistakenly recommend a break (e.g. sporty driving, adverse weather conditions or poor road conditions).
- The system is designed primarily for use on motorways.

Tyre pressure monitoring



Fig. 142
Key for storing the pressure values

The tyre pressure monitoring function (hereinafter referred to as the system) monitors the tyre pressure while driving.

If the tyre inflation pressure changes, the warning light lights up in the instrument cluster and an audible signal is heard » page 38, *Tyre pressure*.

The system can only function properly if the tyres have the prescribed inflation pressure and these pressure values are stored in the system.

Procedure for storing the tyre pressure values

› Inflate all the tyres to the specified pressure.
› Switch on the ignition.
› Press the button » Fig. 142 and hold.

The warning light lights up in the instrument cluster.

An acoustic signal and the control indicator provide information about the storage of the tyre pressure values.

› Release the button .

Always save the tyre pressure values in the system if one of the following events occurs.

▸ Change of tyre inflation pressure.
▸ Change one or more wheels.
▸ Change in position of a wheel on the vehicle.
▸ Illumination of the warning light in the instrument cluster.

WARNING

- The general information relating to the use of assistance systems must be observed » page 112, in section *General information*.
- Having the correct tyre inflation pressure is always the driver's responsibility. Tyre pressure should be checked regularly » page 152.
- The system cannot warn in case of very rapid tyre inflation pressure loss, e.g. in case of sudden tyre damage.
- Before storing the pressures, the tyres must be inflated to the specified inflation pressure » page 152. If the wrong pressure valuesare stored, the system may not issue any warnings, even if the tyre pressure is too low.

CAUTION

Save the tyre pressure values every 10,000 km or 1x annually to ensure correct system functioning.

Towing device and trailer

Hitch

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description 126
Setting the ready position 127
Check the setting of the standby position 127
Assemble the ball rod 127
Check proper mounting 128
Removing ball rod - Step 1 128
Removing ball rod - Step 2 129
Vertical load with mounted accessories 129

The maximum trailer nose weight when towing a trailer is **80 kg**, for vehicles with four-wheel drive and the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR or 2.0 l / 110 kW TDI CR engine, it is **85 kg**. Other information (e.g. on the nameplate of the trailer device) provide only about the test values of the device information.

WARNING

- Check that the tow bar is seated correctly and is secured in the mounting recess before the start of every journey.
- When the ball rod is not used and properly secured in the receiving shaft, this could be damaged or incomplete and must not be used -There is a risk of an accident.
- Do not modify or adapt the towing device in any way.
- Keep the mounting recess of the towing equipment clean at all times. Such dirt prevents the ball head from being attached securely.

Description

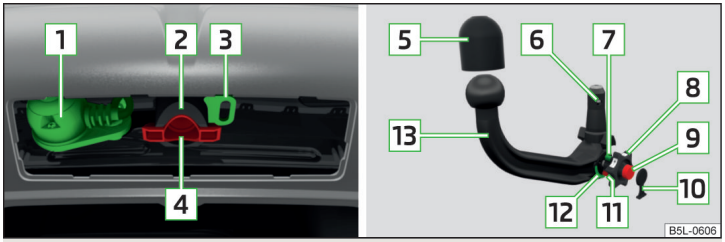


Fig. 143 **Carrier for the towing device/tow bar**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

The ball rod is detachable and is located in the stowage compartment for the spare / emergency wheel.

Support for the towing device and tow bar » Fig. 143

1 13-pin power socket
2 Mounting recess
3 Safety eyelet
4 Cover for the mounting recess
5 Dust cap
6 Locking ball
7 Green marking on the handwheel
8 Handwheel
9 Key
10 Lock cap
11 Red marking on the handwheel
12 Green box on the tow bar
13 Tow ball

Note

If you lose the key, please get in touch with a specialist garage.

Setting the ready position

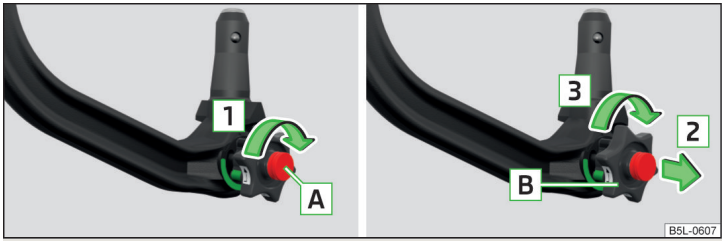


Fig. 144 **Lock unlock / pull out hand wheel and turn**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

The tow bar must be set to the ready position prior to installation» page 127, *Check the setting of the standby position*.

› Grip the tow bar below the protective cap.
› Remove the cap from the lock.
› Insert the key into the hand wheel lock.
› Turn the key A in direction of the arrow 1 to the stop » Fig. 144.
› Pull the handwheel B in the direction of the arrow 2 and drag in the direction of the arrow 3 to the stop. The hand wheel B remains locked in this position.

Check the setting of the standby position

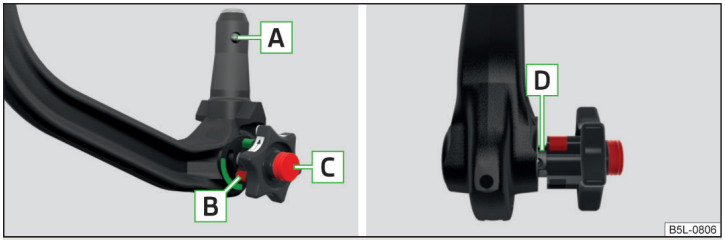


Fig. 145 **Ready position**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

Correctly adjusted standby position » Fig. 145

✓ The locking balls A can be pushed fully into the tow bar.
✓ The red marking B on the hand wheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ The key C is in the unlocked position and cannot be removed.
✓ There is a clear gap of approx. 5 mm D between the hand wheel and the tow bar.

When in the ready position, the key cannot be removed from the lock. The ball bar is thus set ready for installation.

Assemble the ball rod

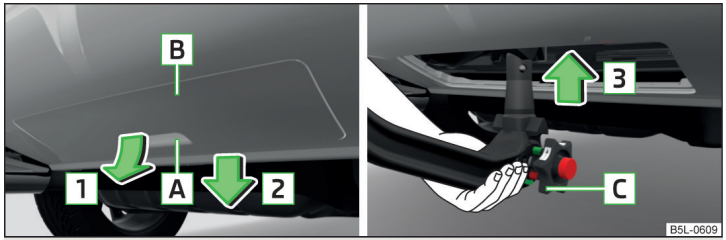


Fig. 146 **Removing the cap on the rear bumper/inserting the tow bar**



Fig. 147 **Locking the lock and removing the key/replacing the lock cap**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

› Grip the cap on the rear bumper B » Fig. 146 at the handle A, release in the direction of the arrow 1 and remove in the direction of the arrow 2.
› Remove the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 143 *on page 126* in a downwards direction.
› Adjust the ball rod to the ready position » page 127.
› Grasp the ball rod **from underneath** » Fig. 146 and install into the receiving shaft in the direction of arrow 3 until it stops. The ball rod must audibly snap into place » !.

The handwheel C » Fig. 146 returns **automatically** and rests on the tow bar » !.

› Lock the handwheel lock by turning the key D » Fig. 147 to the left in the direction of the arrow 4 to the stop, and remove the key in the direction of the arrow 5.
› Put the cap E onto the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 6.
› Check that the tow bar is securely attached » page 128.

! WARNING

- When attaching the tow bar, do not hold the handwheel by hand - risk of injuring fingers!
- Carefully remove the cap for the mounting recess - there is a risk of hand injury!

Check proper mounting

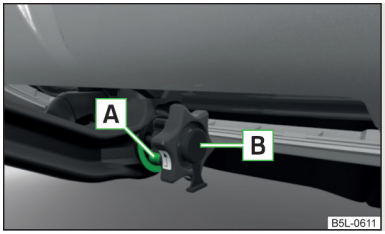


Fig. 148
Correctly secured ball head

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

Correctly secured ball rod » Fig. 148

✓ The tow bar does not come out of the mounting recess even after heavy "shaking".
✓ The green marking A on the handwheel is located in the green box on the tow bar.
✓ The steering wheel is tight against the ball rod.
✓ The key is removed and the cap C is attached to the lock.

Removing ball rod - Step 1



Fig. 149 **Removing the lock cover/releasing the lock**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

No trailer or other accessory is connected to the ball rod. We recommend putting the protective cover onto the ball head before removing the ball rod.

› Remover the cover A from the handwheel lock in the direction of the arrow 1 » Fig. 149.
› Insert the key into the handwheel lock.
› Turn the key B 2 in the direction of the arrow as far as the stop.

Removing ball rod - Step 2

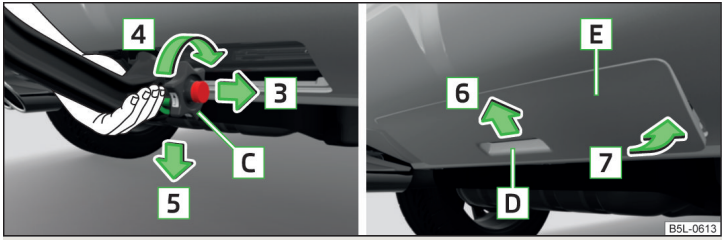


Fig. 150 **Removing the two bar/placing the cover on the rear bumper**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

Removing

› Grip the tow bar **from below** and with the other hand pull the handwheel C in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 150.
› Turn the handwheel in the direction of the arrow 4 **to the stop**, and hold in this position.
› Remove the tow bar from the mounting recess downwards and in the direction of the arrow 5. At the same time, the ball rod latches into the ready position and is therefore ready to be re-fitted.

After removing the ball rod

› Attach the cover for the mounting recess 4 » Fig. 143 *on page 126*.
› Grip the cover on the rear bumper E » Fig. 150 at the handle D and position in the direction of the arrow 6 on the checkmark underneath the upper edge of the bumper.
› Push this cover onto the lower edge and onto the two sides in the direction of the arrow 7.

If the hand wheel C is not turned all the way to the stop, then it will return to its initial position when the tow bar is removed and will rest on the tow bar and not engage into the ready position. The ball head then needs to be brought into this position before the next time it is fitted » page 127.

The ball rod must be cleaned before storing in the box with the vehicle tool always.

! WARNING

Never allow the tow bar to remain unsecured in the boot. This could cause damage to the boot upon sudden braking, and could put the safety of the occupants at risk!

Vertical load with mounted accessories

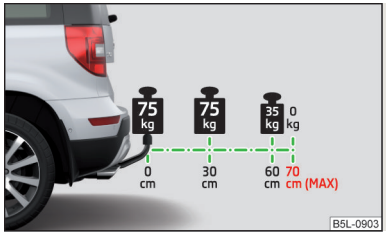


Fig. 151 **Representation of the maximum length of the mounted accessories and the permissible total weight of the accessory depending on the load centre of gravity**

Read and observe ! on page 126 first.

When using the accessories (e.g. bicycle carrier), the maximum length and the permissible total weight including load must be considered.

The **maximum length** of the mounted accessories (from the ball of the towing device) is **70 cm** » Fig. 151.

The total permitted weight of the accessories including load changes with increasing distance of the load centre of gravity from the ball head of the towing device.

Distance of the centre of gravity of the load from the ball head	Permissible total weight of the accessories, including load
0 cm	75 kg
30 cm	75 kg
60 cm	35 kg
70 cm	0 kg

! CAUTION

Never exceed the permissible **total weight** of the accessories incl. load and **maximum length** of the accessories - risk of damage to the towing device.

Note
We recommend that you use accessories from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Using the towing device

Trailer (accessory) connect and disconnect

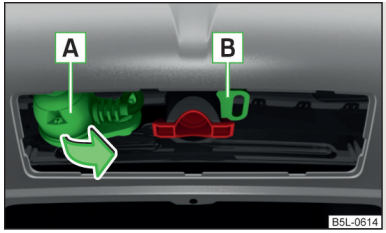


Fig. 152
Swivel out the 13-pin power socket, safety eyelet

Connecting and disconnecting
› Fit the ball bar.
› Swing the 13-pin socket in the direction of arrow A » Fig. 152.
› Remove the protective cap 5 » Fig. 143 *on page 126*.
› Place the trailer (the accessory) onto the ball head.
› Plug the trailer cable into 13-pin socket A » Fig. 152. (If the trailer / accessories have a 7-pin connector, use a corresponding reduction piece from the ŠKODA Original Accessories).
› Suspend the breakaway cable of the trailer at the safety eyelet B (the breakaway cable must **sag** in all trailer settings in view of the vehicle).

Uncoupling takes place in reverse order.

Exterior mirrors
You should have additional exterior mirrors fitted if you are not able to see the traffic behind the trailer using the standard rear-view mirrors.

Headlights
The front of the vehicle may lift up when a trailer (accessory) is being towed and the headlights may dazzle other road users. Set the range of the headlights » page 60[1)].

Power supply of the trailer / accessory power system
In the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory), the trailer (accessories) is supplied with power from the vehicle (with ignition switched on and off).

With the engine switched off, the vehicle battery is discharged by the connected consumers.

At low charge state of the vehicle battery, the power supply to the trailer (accessories) is interrupted.

WARNING
- An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) may result in an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- Do not make any adjustments to the electrical installation of the vehicle and the trailer (accessories) -There is a risk of an accident or serious injury from electrical shock.
- After the electrical connection between the vehicle and trailer (accessory) the trailer / accessory lights should be checked for function.
- Never use the securing eye to tow - There is a risk of an accident!

CAUTION
An improperly connected electrical installation of the trailer (accessories) can lead to the inoperability of the vehicle electronics.

Loading a trailer

Correct the **tyre inflation pressure** on the vehicle for "full load"» page 152.

Distribution of the cargo
Distribute the cargo in the trailer in such a way that heavy items are located as close to the trailer axle as possible. Secure the load from slipping.

The distribution of the weight is very poor if your vehicle is unladen and the trailer is laden. Nevertheless, maintain a particularly low speed if you cannot avoid driving with this combination.

WARNING
Sliding cargo can significantly adversely affect stability and driving safety - risk of accident!

[1)] Applies to vehicles with xenon headlights.

Trailer

The permissible trailer load must not be exceeded under any circumstances.

Permissible trailer load

Engine	Transmission	Permissible trailer load, braked (kg)		Permissible trailer load, unbraked (kg)
		Gradients of up to 12%	Gradients of up to 8%[a]	
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1200	1500	670
	DSG	1200	1500	680
1.4 l./92 kW TSI	MG	1300	1600	670
	DSG	1300	1600	690
1.4 l./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	1800	1800	730
	DSG 4x4	1800	1800	740
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	-[b]	-[b]	-[b]
	AG	1100	1100	650
1.8 l./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1800	1800	750
2.0 l./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4, EU5)	1500	1500	700
	MG (EU6)	1500	1500	720
	MG 4x4	1800	1800	750
2.0 l./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	2100/2000[c]	2100/2000[c]	750
	DSG 4x4	2100/2000[c]	2100/2000[c]	750
2.0 l./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1800	1800	740
	MG 4x4	2100/2000[c]	2100/2000[c]	750
	DSG 4x4	2100/2000[c]	2100/2000[c]	750

[a] Only valid for some countries.
[b] The vehicle is not equipped with a towing device.
[c] Applies to vehicles of category AF.

WARNING

The maximum vertical load and the maximum trailer load must not be exceeded - there is risk of accident!

Towing a trailer

Driving speed

For safety reasons, do not drive with the trailer any faster than 100 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a passenger car of category M1) or 80 km/h (when the towing vehicle is a truck of category N1).

Immediately reduce your speed as soon as even the slightest swaying of the trailer is detected. Never attempt to stop the trailer from "swaying" by accelerating.

Brakes
Apply the brakes in good time! If the trailer is fitted with a **trailer brake**, apply the brakes gently at first, then brake firmly. This will avoid brake jolts resulting from the trailer wheels locking.

On downhill sections shift down a gear in good time to also use the engine as a brake.

WARNING
Always drive particularly carefully with the trailer.

CAUTION
With frequent towing, the vehicle is excessively loaded so this must also be checked between service intervals.

Anti-theft alarm system

The alarm is triggered if, with a vehicle with activated anti-theft alarm (hereafter only warning system), the electrical connection to the trailer (accessory) is interrupted.

Always switch off the anti-theft alarm system before a trailer (accessory) is coupled or uncoupled » page 53.

Conditions for including a trailer (accessory) in the anti-theft alarm system.
- ✓ The vehicle is factory-fitted with an anti-theft alarm system and a towing device.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is electrically connected to the towing vehicle by means of the trailer socket.
- ✓ The electrical system of the vehicle and trailer (accessory) is functional.
- ✓ The vehicle is locked and the anti-theft alarm system is activated.
- ✓ The trailer (accessory) is not equipped with LED taillights.

General Maintenance

Care and maintenance

Service work, adjustments and technical alterations

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions 133
Statutory checks 133
ŠKODA service partner 133
ŠKODA Original parts 134
ŠKODA Original accessories 134
Spoiler 134
Component protection 134
Airbags 134
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 135

The instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO must be observed when using accessories or carrying out any modifications, repairs or technical alterations to your vehicle.

Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

WARNING

- Adjustments, repairs and technical changes to the vehicle should only be carried out by a specialist. Work carried out incorrectly (including work on the electronic components and their software) can result in malfunctions - there is a risk of an accident and, potentially, increased wear on parts!
- We recommend that you use only ŠKODA Original Accessories and ŠKODA Original Parts which have been expressly approved for use on your vehicle. Reliability, safety and suitability for your vehicle are guaranteed with these.
- Do not use any products which have not been approved by ŠKODA AUTO, even though these may be products with a type approval or which have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

Vehicle operating under different weather conditions

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

If you would like to operate your vehicle in countries other than those with its intended weather conditions, you should contact a ŠKODA Partner. He or she will advise you if certain precautions need to be taken to ensure the full functioning of the vehicle or to prevent damage (e.g. coolant, changing the battery or similar).

Statutory checks

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

Many countries have legislation requiring the operational reliability, safety and, where applicable, roadworthiness and/or exhaust gas properties of a vehicle to be tested at regular intervals. These tests can be carried out by workshops or testing stations that have been legally authorized for this purpose.

The ŠKODA Service partners can prepare your vehicle for the official inspections, so as to ensure that it passes.

Even if you want to take your vehicle to an officially approved test centre for prior checking in preparation for a legally required test, we recommend that you consult your ŠKODA Service Partner beforehand.

ŠKODA service partner

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

All ŠKODA service partners work according to the instructions and guidelines from ŠKODA AUTO. All service and repair work is therefore carried out on time and at the appropriate quality. Adhering to these instructions and guidelines helps ensure road safety and helps keep your vehicle in a good technical condition.

We therefore advise you to have all modifications, repairs and technical alterations to your vehicle carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

ŠKODA Original parts

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

We recommend the use of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for your vehicle, as these parts are approved by ŠKODA AUTO. These parts comply wholly with ŠKODA AUTO regulations and are identical to the parts used in series production.

ŠKODA AUTO is able to warrant the safety, suitability, and long life of these products.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Parts for a period of 2 years after sale in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement.

ŠKODA Original accessories

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

If you wish to fit accessories to your vehicle, you should remember the following:

We recommend that you use ŠKODA Genuine Accessories in your vehicle. ŠKODA AUTO has selected these accessories to ensure that they are reliable, safe and suitable for your particular vehicle. Although we constantly monitor the market, we are not able to assess or vouch the suitability of other products for your vehicle, despite the fact that some products may have operational approval or may have been approved by a nationally recognised testing laboratory.

ŠKODA Service Partners are liable for any defects of ŠKODA Genuine Accessories for a period of 2 years after installation or delivery in accordance with the materials defect liability, unless agreed otherwise in the purchase agreement or any other agreements.

Spoiler

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

! WARNING

If your vehicle is equipped with a Genuine Accessories spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the spoiler on the boot lid, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of accidents and serious injuries!

- The vehicle can only be equipped with a spoiler on the front bumper in combination with the corresponding spoiler on the boot lid.
- A Genuine Accessories spoiler cannot be fitted to the front bumper either on its own (without a spoiler on the boot lid) or in combination with an unsuitable spoiler on the boot lid.
- We recommend that you consult the ŠKODA Service Partner for any repairs to or replacement, addition or removal of spoilers.
- Unprofessional work carried out on the spoilers of your vehicle may result in malfunction.

Component protection

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

Some electronic vehicle components (such as the instrument cluster) are factory-equipped with component protection. This ensures the functional limitation of these components in a non-legitimate installation in another vehicle (e.g. after a theft) or operation outside the vehicle.

Airbags

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

! WARNING

- Modifications, repairs and technical alterations that have been carried out unprofessionally can cause damage and operational faults, and can also seriously impair the effectiveness of the airbag system – risk of accident and fatal injury!
- A change to the vehicle's wheel suspension, including the use of non-approved wheels and tire combinations, can impair the functioning of the airbag system - There is a risk of an accident and fatal injury!

WARNING

- No changes may be made to airbag system components, the front bumper and the bodywork.
- Any work on the airbag system including the installation and removal of system components due to other repair work (e.g. removal of the steering wheel) must only be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Do not manipulate individual parts of the airbag system, as this might result in the airbag being deployed.
- If the airbag has been deployed, the airbag system must be replaced.

WARNING

The airbag system operates using pressure sensors located in the front doors. For this reason, no adjustments may be carried out to the doors or door panels (e.g. installation of additional loudspeakers). Resulting damage can impair the functioning of the airbag system - There is a risk of accidents and fatal injuries! The following guidelines must be observed.

- Any work on the front doors and their door panels must be carried out by a specialist garage.
- Never drive the vehicle with the inner door panels removed or with openings in the panelling.

Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles

Read and observe ! on page 133 first.

All new ŠKODA vehicles are 95% recyclable.

Service intervals

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Overview of service intervals 136
Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4 136
Variable service interval QI6 136
Digital Service Plan 137

The service interval display in the display of the instrument cluster will remind you to carry out every service stipulated by the manufacturer at the right time in order to prevent you from forgetting any» page 46.

The completion of services can be verified through the printed verification from the digital service schedule and the respective receipts.

The specified service intervals are tailored to normal operating conditions.

In the case of aggravated operating conditions, it will be necessary to have some service work carried out before the date of the next regular service or between the specified service intervals. This applies mainly to the cleaning or the replacement of the air filter insert in regions with heavy dust pollution as well as checking and replacing the toothed belt, but also to vehicles with diesel particle filters, which can put greater strain on the engine oil.

The following is taken to mean aggravated operating conditions:

- Fuel containing sulphur.
- Frequent short trips.
- Longer periods of engine idling (e.g. taxis).
- Operation in areas with heavy dust pollution.
- Frequent trailer operation.
- Predominantly stop-and-go traffic as is e.g. often the case in city driving.
- Operation predominantly during winter.

You will be told at the specialist garage whether the operating conditions of your vehicle may make it necessary for service work to be carried out between the normal service intervals.

Different service charges may apply according to the particular scope of work required, the vehicle type and specification, and your vehicle's condition.

Note

- The customer is responsible for covering the cost of all services including changing or replenishing the oil, even during the warranty period, unless stated otherwise in the ŠKODA AUTO warranty terms or other agreements.
- You will be informed about the service checks and actions at each service by the specialist garage.

Overview of service intervals

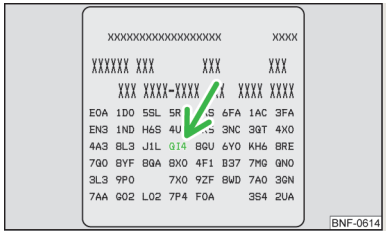


Fig. 153
Vehicle data: Service Interval

The service interval specified by the manufacturer is indicated on the vehicle data carrier » Fig. 153 which can be found both in this Owner's Manual as well as in the vehicle.

One of the following service intervals applies for your vehicle.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI1.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI2.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI3.
- ▸ Fixed service interval QI4.
- ▸ Variable service interval QI6.

In order to operate a vehicle with a variable service interval, it must only be filled and topped up with the prescribed engine oil.

If this engine oil is not available, the oil change is subject to a fixed service interval. In this case, the vehicle **must** be changed to the fixed service interval.

Note

- The corresponding motor oil specifications » page 146.
- For vehicles with variable service interval QI6 you can initiate a change to the fixed service interval or back to the variable service interval to be carried out by a specialist garage.

Fixed service intervals QI1 - QI4

Oil change service	QI1	Every 5 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI2	Every 7 500 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI3	Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
	QI4	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 1	QI1 - QI4	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2		Every 15 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 3		Every 10 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Brake fluid change	QI1 - QI4	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – There is a risk of an accident!

Note

For diesel operation with a high sulphur content, the oil must be changed every 7 500 km. Ask your specialist garage for information on the countries where diesel fuel has a high sulphur content.

Variable service interval QI6

The oil change service intervals depend on the intensity at which the vehicle is driven and the local conditions in which the vehicle is used. For example, your vehicle is subjected to different demands when driven over short distances than when driven over long distances. The intervals are therefore **variable**.

Oil change service	In accordance with the service interval display (after 30 000 km or 2 years[a] at the latest).
Inspection[b] Variant 1	After the first 30 000 km or 2 years[a], then every 30 000 km or every 1 year[a].
Inspection[b] Variant 2	Every 15 000 km or every 1 year.
Brake fluid change	First change after 3 years, then every 2 years.

[a] Depending on which comes first.
[b] For information about the variant that applies to your vehicle, please contact a ŠKODA partner.

WARNING

The brake fluid must always be changed after the first 3 years and then every 2 years. Longer intervals between changing the brake fluid can cause vapour bubbles to form in the brake system when braking sharply. This can impair the efficiency of the brakes – risk of accident!

Digital Service Plan

A specialist garage will not record the work carried out in a service evidence in this Owner's Manual, but in the service information system called the Digital Service Plan.

We therefore recommend that you always have the record of work carried out in a service printed out for you.

Benefits of the Digital Service Plan

- High level of security preventing manipulation of the entries.
- Transparent documentation of service work carried out.
- Protection against loss or damage of the entries, you receive a complete record of the work carried out, if required.
- Option to receive the record in electronic form.
- The vehicle can be serviced in any specialist garage (also abroad) – the database is accessible worldwide.
- Increased transparency when purchasing a used vehicle due to entries being stored centrally.
- The system entries support you in making a claim on the ŠKODA extended warranty and mobility guarantees.

Cleaning and care

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Car washing ____ 137
Exterior car care ____ 138
Caring for the interior ____ 140

Regular and thorough care helps to retain the value of your vehicle.

The instructions for use on the packaging must be observed when using care products. We recommend that you use ŠKODA Original Accessories care products.

WARNING

- Vehicle care products may be harmful to your health if not used according to the instructions.
- Always keep the vehicle care products safe from people who are not completely independent, e.g. children - danger of poisoning!

CAUTION

- Do not use any insect sponges, rough kitchen sponges or similar cleaning products – risk of damaging the paintwork surface.
- Do not use aggressive cleaning agents or chemical solvents - There is a danger of damaging the surface to be cleaned.

Note

We recommend that the vehicle is cleaned and maintained at a ŠKODA service partner.

Car washing

Read and observe and on page 137 first.

The best way to protect your vehicle against harmful environmental influences is frequent washing.

The longer insect residues, bird droppings, road salt and other aggressive deposits remain on the paintwork of your vehicle, the more detrimental their destructive effect can be. High temperatures, such as those caused by intensive sun's rays, accentuate this caustic effect.

It is also essential to thoroughly clean the underside of the vehicle at the end of the winter.

Washing by hand

Wash the vehicle from top to bottom, with a soft sponge or a wash mitt and plenty of water, and, if necessary, with the appropriate detergents. Wash out the sponge or washing glove thoroughly at short intervals.

For wheels, door sills and lower areas of the vehicle use a different sponge.

Give the vehicle a good rinse after washing it and dry it off using a chamois leather.

Automatic Car Washes

The usual precautionary measures must be taken before washing the vehicle (e.g. closing the windows and the tilt/slide roof etc.).

If your vehicle is fitted with any particular attached parts (e.g. spoiler, roof rack system, aerial etc.) it is best to consult the operator of the car wash system beforehand.

After an automatic wash with wax treatment, the wiper blades should be cleaned with cleaning agents specially designed for the purpose, and then degreased.

Pressure Washers
When washing the vehicle with a high-pressure cleaner, the instructions for use of the equipment must be observed. This particularly applies to instructions regarding the **pressure** and **spraying distance** from the vehicle surface.

Maintain a sufficiently large distance to the parking aid sensors and soft materials such as rubber hoses or insulation material » .

WARNING

- When washing your vehicle in the winter: Water and ice in the braking system can affect the braking efficiency – risk of accident!
- Take care when cleaning the underbody or the inside of the wheel wells - there is a risk of injury from sharp metal parts!

CAUTION

- Do not wash the vehicle in direct sunlight, do not exert pressure on the body while washing. The temperature of the washing water should be no more than 60 °C max. - otherwise there is a risk of damaging the vehicle paint.
- Before driving through a car wash fold in the exterior mirrors - There is a risk of damage.
- For vehicles with roof antenna the antenna rod should be unscrewed before driving through a car wash - there is a risk of damage.

CAUTION

Washing the vehicle with high-pressure cleaners
- Films should not be washed with any high-pressure cleaners - There is a risk of damage.
- Do not aim the water jet directly at the lock cylinders or the door or opening joints when washing the vehicle in the winter – there is a risk of freezing.
- The sensors of the parking aid can be sprayed only for a short time and there must be a minimum distance of 10 cm - there is a risk of damage.

Exterior car care

Read and observe and on page 137 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Paint	Spilled fuel	Clear water, cloth, (clean as soon as possible)
	No water droplets form on the paint	Use hard wax preserve (at least twice a year), apply wax to clean and dry body
	Paint has gone matt	Use polish, then wax (if the polish does not contain any preservative ingredients)
Plastic parts	Soiling	Clear water, cloth / sponge, cleaning agents provided for this purpose where appropriate
Chrome and anodised parts	Soiling	clear water, cloth, cleaning agents provided for this purpose where appropriate, clean then polish with a soft dry cloth
Films	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Windows and door mirrors	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Head / taillights	Soiling	Soft sponge and mild soap solution[a)]
Reversing camera	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a soft cloth
	Snow/ice	Hand brush / de-icer
Door lock cylinders	Snow/ice	De-icing fluid specifically for that purpose
Wipers / wiper blades	Soiling	Windscreen cleaner, sponge or cloth
Wheels	Soiling	Clear water, then apply appropriate substance

[a)] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

The **jack** is maintenance-free. If necessary, the moving parts of the jack should be lubricated with a suitable lubricant.

The **towing device** is maintenance-free. Coat the ball head of the towing device with a suitable grease whenever necessary.

Protection of cavities
All the cavities of your vehicle which are at risk from corrosion are protected by a layer of long-lasting protective wax applied in the factory.

If any small amount of wax flow out of the cavities at high temperatures, these must be removed with a plastic scraper and the stains cleaned using a petroleum cleaner.

Underbody
The underside of your vehicle is already permanently protected by the factory against chemical and mechanical influences.

We recommend having the protective coating checked — preferably before the beginning of winter and at the end of winter.

Product life of the films
Environmental influences (e.g. sunlight, humidity, air pollution, rockfall) affect the life of the films. Films will age and become brittle – this is entirely normal; this is not a fault.

Sunlight may also affect the strength of the film colour.

When transporting a load on the roof rack (e.g. roof box or similar), there is an increased risk of film damage (e.g. of chipping from the secured load).

! CAUTION

- **Vehicle paint**
  - Repair damaged areas as soon as possible.
  - Matt-painted parts should not be treated with polishes or hard waxes.
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - risk of paint scratches.
  - Do not apply any paint care products to door seals or window guides.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not use paint polish.
- **Chromed and anodised parts**
  - Do not polish in a dusty environment - There is a risk of surface scratches.
- **Films**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of film damage.
  - Do not use dirty cloths or sponges for cleaning.
  - Do not use a scraper or other means to remove ice and snow.
  - Do not polish the films.
  - Do not use a high pressure cleaner on the films.
- **Rubber seals**
  - Do not treat the door seals and window guides deal with anything - the protective varnish coating could be damaged.
- **Windows and door mirrors**
  - Do not clean the insides of the windows/mirrors with sharp objects - risk of damage to the filaments or the antenna.
  - Do not use a cloth which has been used to polish the body - this could dirty the window and impair visibility.
- **Head / taillights**
  - Do not wipe head/taillights dry, do not use any sharp objects - There is a risk of damage to the protective coating and of cracks forming on the headlight glass covers.
- **Reversing camera**
  The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of camera damage.
  - Do not remove snow / ice with warm / hot water.
  - To wash, never use a pressure washer or steam jet.
  - For cleaning, do not use abrasive cleaners.
- **Door lock cylinders**
  - Make sure that as little water as possible gets into the locking cylinder when washing the vehicle - there is a risk of freezing the lock cylinder!
- **Wheels**
  - Heavy soiling of the wheels can affect the balance of the wheels - the result can be a vibration, which can cause premature wear of the steering.

Caring for the interior

Read and observe ! and ! on page 137 first.

Vehicle components	Circumstances	Remedy
Natural leather / Artificial leather / Alcantara® / Material	Dust, surface soiling	Vacuum cleaner
	Soiling (fresh)	Water, slightly damp cotton / wool cloth, if necessary, mild soap solution[a], then wipe off with a soft cloth
	Stubborn stains	Cleaning fluid specifically for this task
	Care (natural leather)	Treat the leather periodically with a leather protecting fluid / use a care cream with light blocker and impregnation after each cleaning
	Care (Alcantara® / material)	Remove stubborn hair using a "cleaning glove" Remove pills from materials with a brush
Plastic parts	Soiling	Water, slightly damp cloth or sponge, if necessary cleaners specifically for this purpose
Windows	Soiling	Wash with clean water and dry with a wipe specifically for that purpose
Covers on electrically heated seats	Soiling	Cleaners specifically for this purpose
Seat belts » !	Soiling	soft cloth and mild soap solution[a]

[a] Mild soap solution = 2 tablespoons of natural soap to 1 litre of lukewarm water.

! WARNING

- Never clean the seat belts chemically as chemical cleaning products could destroy the fabric.
- Air fresheners and scents can be hazardous to heath when the temperature inside the vehicle is high.

! CAUTION

- **Natural leather / leather / Alcantara® / material**
  - Avoid standing for lengthy periods in bright sunlight, and protect the materials by covering to prevent them from fading.
  - Remove fresh stains (e.g. from pens, lipstick, shoe polish and similar) as soon as possible.
  - Ensure that no part of the leather is soaked through during cleaning and that no water gets into the seams - There is a risk of damaging the leather!
  - Do not clean the roof panelling with a brush – There is a risk of damage to the surface of the panelling.
  - Do not use leather cleaners, floor wax, shoe cream, stain remover or similar agents on Alcantara® seat upholstery.
  - Some clothing fabrics (e.g. dark denim) do not have sufficient colour fastness - this could lead to clearly visible discolouration on the upholstery. This is not a defect in the fabric.
  - Sharp objects on garments (e.g. zips, rivets, sharp- edged belts) can damage the upholstery fabrics in the vehicle. Such damage will not be recognised as a justified complaint.
- **Plastic parts**
  - Do not attach scents or air fresheners to the dashboard – There is a risk of damage to the dashboard.
- **Windows**
  - Do not attach any stickers to the filaments or glass antenna - there is risk of damage.
- **Covers on electrically heated seats**
  - Do not clean either with water or with other liquids - There is a risk of damage to the heating system.
  - Do not dry by switching on the heating.
- **Seat belts**
  - After cleaning the belts, allow them to dry before retracting them.

i Note

During vehicle use, some minor changes may become visible on the leather and Alcantara®(due to e.g. folds, discolouration).

Inspecting and replenishing

Fuel

Introduction

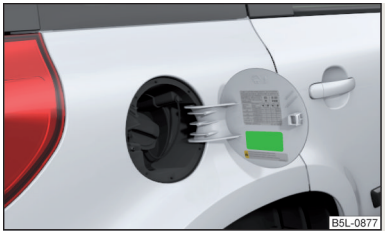


Fig. 154
Stickers showing the prescribed fuel

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Petrol and diesel refuelling _____ 141
Unleaded petrol _____ 142
Diesel fuel _____ 142

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 154.

The fuel capacity for vehicles with front wheel drive is about **55 litres,** and for vehicles with four-wheel drive about **60 litres,** with about **9 litres** as reserve.

WARNING

Fuel vapours are explosive - can be fatal!

CAUTION

- Never drive until the fuel tank is completely empty! Irregular supply of fuel can cause misfiring, which can result in damage to parts of the engine and the exhaust system.
- Immediately remove any fuel that has spilled onto the vehicle's paintwork – risk of paint damage.
- If you would like to operate your vehicle in a country other than the one for which it was intended, please talk to a ŠKODA Partner. They will tell you whether the fuel specified by the manufacturer is offered in that country and/or whether the manufacturer will sanction operating the vehicle with another fuel.

Petrol and diesel refuelling

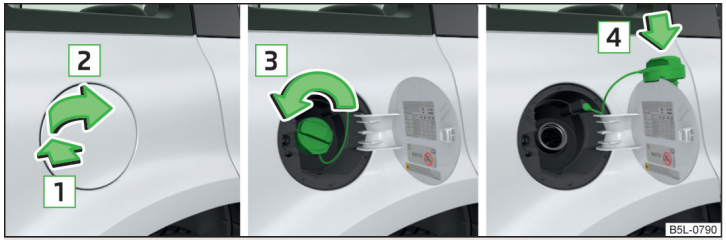


Fig. 155 **Open fuel filler flap / unscrew tank cap / place the tank cap on the fuel filler flap**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

Perform the refuelling under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is unlocked.
✓ The ignition is switched off.
✓ The aux. heating and ventilation is switched off.

› Press the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 1 and fold in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 155.
› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 3.
› Remove the tank cap and place on top of the fuel filler flap in direction of arrow 4.
› Insert the pump nozzle into the fuel filler tube as far as it will go.

The fuel tank is full as soon as the pump nozzle switches off for the first time. Not continue refuelling.

› Remove the pump nozzle from the fuel filler neck and put it back in the pump.
› Place the filler cap onto the fuel filler neck and turn it in the opposite direction to the arrow until it securely engages 3.
› Close the fuel filler flap until it clicks into place.

Unleaded petrol

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 154 *on page 141*.

The vehicle can only operate with **unleaded petrol** that meets standard **EN 228**[1], and contains **maximum** 10% bioethanol **(E10)**.

Unleaded petrol 95/91 or 92 or 93 RON/ROZ
We recommend using petrol **95** ROZ.

Optionally, the petrol **91 ,92** or. **93** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

Specified petrol is unleaded, min. 95 RON / ROZ
At least use **95** ROZ gasoline.

In an **emergency**, **91**. **92** or**93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

Prescribed petrol 98/(95) RON / ROZ
We recommend using petrol **98** ROZ.

Optionally, petrol **95** ROZ can be used (slight power loss, a slightly increased fuel consumption).

In an **emergency**, **91**. **92** or**93** ROZ petrol can be used (slight loss of power, slightly increased fuel consumption) » !.

! CAUTION

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.

- When petrol with a lower than the prescribed octane is used, only continue driving at mid-range engine speeds and with minimal strain on the engine. Refuel using petrol of the prescribed octane number as soon as possible.
- **Lower** than **91** octane petrol should not be used, even in an emergency!
- If a fuel other than unleaded fuel which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. leaded petrol) is put in the tank by mistake, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition.

! CAUTION

Petrol additives (additives)

- Unleaded petrol complying with the EN 228 standard[1] meets all the conditions for problem-free engine operation. We therefore do not recommend mixing fuel additives into the petrol - risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.
- **The following additives may not be used - There is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system!**
  - Additives with metal components (metallic additives), in particular with manganese and iron content.
  - Fuels with metallic content (e.g. LRP - lead replacement petrol).

i Note

- Unleaded petrol that has a higher octane number than that required by the engine can be used without limitations.
- On vehicles with prescribed unleaded petrol **95/91, 92 or 93** ROZ, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** ROZ does not result in a noticeable power increase or a lower fuel consumption.
- On vehicles using the prescribed petrol of **min. 95** ROZ, the use of petrol with a higher octane number than **95** ROZ can lead to an increase in power and reduction in fuel consumption.

Diesel fuel

Read and observe ! and ! on page 141 first.

The correct fuel for your vehicle is specified on the inside of the fuel filler flap» Fig. 154 *on page 141*.

The vehicle can only be operated using **diesel fuel** that complies with the standard **EN 590**[2] and contains a **maximum** 7% biodiesel **(B7)**[3].

[1] In Germany also DIN 51626-1 or E10 for unleaded petrol with octane number 91 or 95 or DIN 51626-2 or E5 for unleaded petrol with octane number 95 and 98.

[2] In Germany DIN 51628, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in Russia GOST R 52368-2005 / EN 590: 2004, in India IS 1460 / Bharat IV or in an emergency IS 1460 / Bharat III.

[3] In Germany according to the DIN 52638 standard, in Austria ÖNORM C 1590, in France EN 590.

Operating under different weather conditions
Use only diesel in accordance with the current or expected weather conditions. Ask the petrol station personnel whether the diesel fuel offered corresponds to these conditions.

CAUTION
The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is a risk of damage to the engine and to the exhaust system.
- If a different fuel other than diesel fuel, which complies to the above mentioned standards (e.g. petrol) is put into the tank, do not start the engine or switch on the ignition!
- The biofuel **RME** must not be used!

CAUTION
Diesel fuel additives
- The diesel fuel in accordance with the prescribed standards meets all the conditions for a smooth running engine. Therefore, we recommend that you do not add any fuel additives to the diesel - there is a risk of engine damage or damage to the exhaust system.

AdBlue® And its refilling

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Check level ____ 143
AdBlue® refill ____ 144

In order to reduce pollutant emissions from vehicles with diesel engines and the SCR catalyst, a urea - AdBlue® solution is injected into the exhaust system.

Only use AdBlue® that corresponds to the **standard** ISO 22241-1. Do not add additives to AdBlue®.

The AdBlue® **consumption** is approx. 1.2 l - 1.6 l/1000 km, depending on driving style, the operating temperature of the system and on the weather conditions.

AdBlue®-**tank filling level** is about **8.5 litres**.

WARNING
AdBlue® can cause skin, eye and respiratory irritation. If your eyes or skin come into contact with the AdBlue® fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes with a lot of water. If necessary get medical assistance.

CAUTION
AdBlue® attacks the surface of some materials (e.g. as painted parts, plastics, fabrics). Clean the areas affected with AdBlue® using a damp cloth and plenty of cold water. Remove any dried AdBlue® with warm water and a sponge.

Note
- The AdBlue® solution freezes at a temperature of -11 °C and below. The system has a heater to ensure the operability at low temperatures.
- We recommend purchasing AdBlue® refill bottles from the ŠKODA original parts.
- The working life of the AdBlue® solution is 4 years. After this time, the solution must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- AdBlue® is a registered trademark of the VDA. AdBlue® is also known as AUS 32 (Aqueous Urea Solution) or DEF (Diesel Exhaust Fluid).

Check level

Read and observe and on page 143 first.

The filler neck of AdBlue®Tank is located in the luggage compartment under the symbol and the cap marked with the lettering "AdBlue® " » Fig. 156 *on page 144*.

The AdBlue® level is automatically monitored.

If the available travel distance that can be completed with the remaining AdBlue® tank capacity drops to about 2400 km, the warning appears on the instrument cluster and a request for replenishment of AdBlue® appears.

An indication also appears in the instrument cluster showing the maximum and minimum AdBlue® tank capacity.

If the available travel distance that can be driven with the existing AdBlue® tank capacity drops down to 0 km, **then no motor start is possible**.

The distance which can still be driven with the remaining AdBlue®, can be determined using the travel data» page 32.

AdBlue® refill

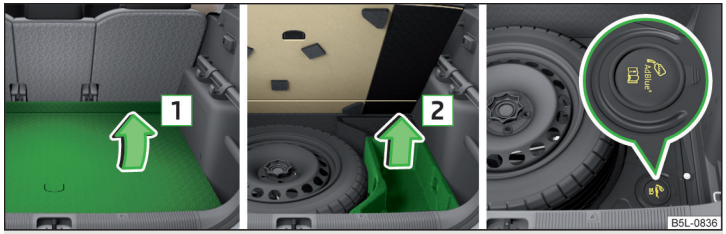


Fig. 156 **Raise flooring / remove box / cover lid**



Fig. 157 **Open the cover lid / rotate the fuel filler cap / filler neck**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 143 first.

We recommend AdBlue® to be refilled by a specialized workshop. If necessary, you can refill this yourself using a refill bottle.

We recommend when refilling using refill bottles that you use refill bottles from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

When adding AdBlue® take note of the minimum and maximum AdBlue® tank capacity shown in the display of the instrument cluster » page 32.

Refill AdBlue® under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The ignition is switched off.

Refilling

› Fold up the flooring in the luggage compartment in the arrow direction 1 » Fig. 156.

› Remove the box for the vehicle tools in the direction of arrow 2.

› Open the filler cap in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 157.

› Unscrew the tank cap in the direction of arrow 4.

› Fill the AdBlue® through the filler A according to the instructions on the refill bottle.

› After filling AdBlue® put the tank cap on the fuel filler neck and turn in the opposite direction of the arrow 4 until it reaches the stop.

› Close the filler cap in the opposite direction to the arrow 3.

› Store the box for the vehicle tools in the same place again.

› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Before continuing your journey, switch on just the ignition for 30 s so that the refilling can be recognized by the system. Only then start the engine.

Engine compartment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Opening and closing the bonnet 145
Engine compartment overview 146
Windscreen washer fluid 146

! WARNING

Never cover the engine with additional insulation material (e.g. with a cover) – risk of fire!

! WARNING

When working in the engine compartment, the following instructions must be observed - otherwise there is a risk of injury or fire. The engine compartment of your car is a hazardous area!

! WARNING

Instructions before beginning work in the engine compartment

▪ Stop the engine and remove the ignition key, on vehicles with the KESSY system, open the driver's door.

WARNING (Continued)

- Firmly apply the handbrake.
- For vehicles with **manual transmission** the lever into the neutral position. For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
- Allow the engine to cool.
- Never open the bonnet if you can see steam or coolant flowing out of the engine compartment – There is a risk of scalding! Wait until the steam or coolant has stopped escaping.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine room

- Keep everyone away from the engine compartment.
- Do not touch any hot engine parts – risk of burns!
- Never touch the radiator fan. The radiator fan may still turn suddenly about 10 minutes after switching off the ignition!
- Do not smoke in the vicinity of the engine and avoid the use of open flames or sparks.
- Do not leave any items (e.g. cloths or tools) in the engine compartment. This presents a fire hazard and the risk of engine damage.
- Read and observe the information and warning instructions on the fluid containers.

WARNING

Information for working in the engine compartment with the engine running

- If it is necessary to work on the engine with the engine running, beware of **rotating engine parts and electrical plants** - There is a risk to life!
- Never touch the electric wiring on the ignition system.
- Avoid short circuits in the electrical system, particularly on the vehicle's battery.

CAUTION

Only refill using fluids with the proper specification - There is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

Note

- Fluids with the proper specifications can be purchased from the ŠKODA Original Accessories or from the ŠKODA Genuine Parts ranges.
- We recommend you have the operating fluids replaced by a specialist garage.

Opening and closing the bonnet

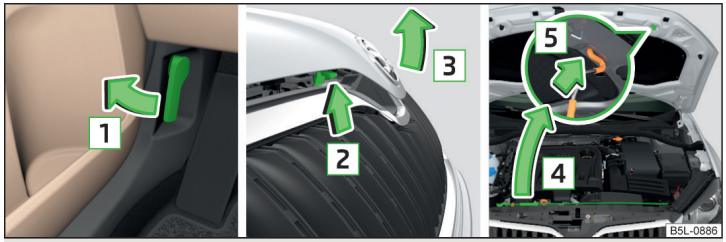


Fig. 158 **Opening the bonnet**

Read and observe and on page 144 first.

Open flap

› Ensure that the windscreen wipers are not raised away from the windscreen -There is a risk of damage to the bonnet.
› Open the front door and pull the release lever below the dash panel in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 158.
› Press the release lever in the direction of the arrow 2 and the bonnet is unlocked.
› Raise the bonnet in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Remove the lid prop in the direction of arrow 4 from the holder.
› Secure the open flap inserting the end of the post into the opening in the direction of arrow 5.

Close the flap

› Lift the bonnet.
› Decouple the bonnet support and press into the holder designed to hold it.
› Drop down the bonnet lid from a height of about 20 cm applying light pressure until it clicks safely into place.

WARNING

- Never drive with the bonnet lid not properly closed - There is a risk of accident!
- Make sure that when closing the bonnet, no body parts are crushed - there is danger of injury!

Engine compartment overview

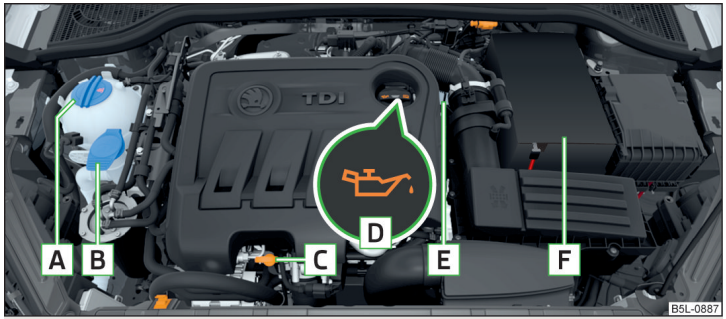


Fig. 159 **Arrangement (example) in the engine compartment**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 144 first.

A Coolant expansion reservoir 148
B Windscreen washer fluid reservoir 146
C Engine oil dipstick 147
D Engine oil filler opening 147
E Brake fluid reservoir 149
F Vehicle battery 149

Windscreen washer fluid

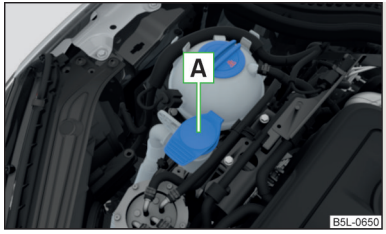


Fig. 160
Windscreen washer fluid reservoir

Read and observe ! and ! on page 144 first.

The windscreen washer fluid reservoir A is located in the engine compartment » Fig. 160.

The capacity of the reservoir A is about 3 litres or about 5.5 litres on vehicles that have a headlight cleaning system[1].

Use a suitable windscreen washer fluid for the current or expected weather conditions. We recommend that you use windscreen washer fluid from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

! CAUTION

- If the vehicle is equipped with a headlight cleaning system, then only use windscreen washer fluid types that do not attack the polycarbonate coating of the headlights - otherwise there is a risk of damage to headlights.
- Do not remove the filter from the windscreen washer fluid reservoir when replenishing it with liquid - otherwise the liquid transportation system might be contaminated, which can cause the windscreen washer system to malfunction.

Engine oil

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Specification 147
Check and refill 147

The engine has been filled ex-factory with a high-grade oil that can be used throughout the year (except in extreme climate zones).

We recommend that the oil changes are carried out by a ŠKODA Service Partner.

The engine oil should be changed at specified service intervals » page 135.

The engine uses up some oil, depending on driving style and operating conditions (up to 0.5 l / 1 000 km). Consumption may be slightly higher than this during the first 5 000 km.

[1] In some countries, 5.5 ltr. applies for both variants.

WARNING

The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 144.

CAUTION

Do not add any additives to the engine oil - There is a risk of engine damage.

Note

We recommend that you use oils from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Specification

Read and observe and on page 147 first.

The specifications (VW standards) stated in the following can be indicated separately or together with other specifications on the bottle.

Vehicles with variable service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	VW 504 00
1.4 l/92, 110 kW TSI	
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	

Diesel engines	Specification
2.0 l/81, 103, 110 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

Vehicles with fixed service intervals

Petrol engines	Specification
1.2 l/81 kW TSI	VW 502 00
1.4 l/92, 110 kW TSI	
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI	VW 502 00
	applies to Russia SAE 0W-30 VW 502 00 / 505 00

Diesel engines	Specification
2.0 l/81, 103, 110 kW TDI CR	VW 507 00

Engine oil VW 505 01 can optionally be used in diesel engines **without a DPF**.

CAUTION

- If no prescribed engine oil is available, then **max. 0.5 l** oil of the following specifications can be refilled.
  - Petrol engines: ACEA A3/ACEA B4 or API SN, (API SM);
  - Diesel engines: ACEA C3 or API CJ-4.

Check and refill

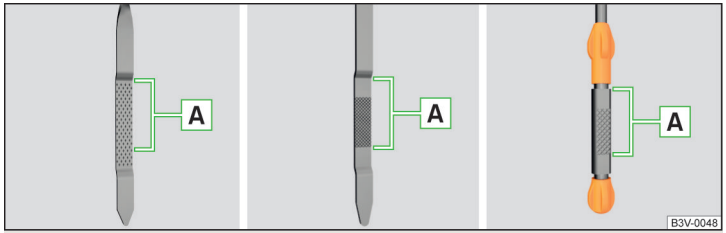


Fig. 161 **Dipstick variants**

Read and observe and on page 147 first.

Check and refill oil under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is standing on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine operating temperature is reached.
✓ The engine is turned off.

Checking the level

› Wait a few minutes until the engine oil flows back into the oil trough.
› Pull the dipstick out and wipe with a clean cloth.
› Push the dipstick back to the stop and then pull it out again.
› Read the oil level and push the dipstick back in.

The oil level must lie in range A » Fig. 161. If the oil level is below range A, oil must be added.

Refilling

› Unscrew the cap of the engine oil filler opening D » Fig. 159 *on page 146*.
› Add oil of the correct specification in portions of 0.5 litres » page 147.
› Check the oil level.
› Screw the lid of the engine oil filler closed carefully.

CAUTION

- The oil level must never be below range A » Fig. 161 – risk of damage to the engine as well as to the exhaust system.
- If a top up with oil is not possible or the oil level is above range A, Stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

Too low engine oil level is shown in the instrument cluster by the warning light illuminating and also indicated by the message» page 35. Nevertheless, we recommend checking the oil level on a regular basis using the dipstick.

Coolant

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Checking and refilling ____ 148

The coolant helps to keep the engine temperature down, and consists of water and coolant additive (with additives that protect the cooling system against corrosion and prevent furring).

The proportion of coolant additive in the coolant must be 40 to 60 %.

The correct mix of water and coolant additive should be checked and if necessary corrected by a specialist garage.

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 144.
- Never open the end cover of the coolant expansion reservoir while the engine is still warm. The cooling system is pressurised -There is a risk of scalding or injury from splashes of coolant!
- To protect against the coolant splashing, cover the cap with a cloth when opening.
- Coolant and coolant fumes are harmful - avoid contact with the coolant. If the coolant comes into contact with the eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water for several minutes, and where appropriate seek medical help.

CAUTION

Do not cover the radiator and install any parts (e.g auxiliary lights.) in front of the air intakes - There is a risk of the engine overheating.

Checking and refilling

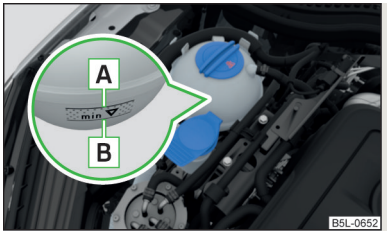


Fig. 162
Coolant expansion reservoir

Read and observe and on page 148 first.

Check and refill coolant under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.
✓ The engine is not warm (if the engine is warm the result of the check may be wrong).
✓ The engine is turned off.

Check the coolant level - the coolant level must lie between the marks A and B» Fig. 162. If the coolant level is below the mark B, top up with coolant.

Refilling

The reservoir must always contain a small amount of coolant » .

› Place a cloth over the cap of the coolant expansion tank and unscrew the cap **carefully**.
› Always top up using coolant of the correct specification.
› Turn the cap until it clicks into place.

The **specification** for the coolant is shown in the coolant expansion reservoir » Fig. 162.

If the specified coolant is not available, then refilling only with distilled or demineralised water, and get a specialist garage to correct the water-coolant additive mix as soon as possible.

CAUTION

- If the expansion tank is empty, do not top up with coolant. The system could aerate - There is a risk of engine damage! Stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- Do not fill the coolant above the mark A » Fig. 162. The coolant could, when heated, be expelled from the cooling system - There is a risk of damage to the engine parts.
- If it is not possible to add coolant, stop driving! Switch off the engine and seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- A coolant additive which does not correspond to the correct specification can reduce the anti-corrosion effect of the cooling system - risk of damage to the cooling system and the engine.
- If non-distilled (non-demineralised) water has been used to top up, the coolant should be replaced by a specialist garage - There is a risk of engine damage.
- A loss of coolant indicates **leaks** in the cooling system -There is a risk of engine damage. Top up with coolant and then seek assistance from a specialist garage.

Note

Too low coolant level is indicated in the instrument cluster by the warning light and shown by the message» page 34. We still recommend inspecting the coolant level directly at the reservoir from time to time.

Brake fluid

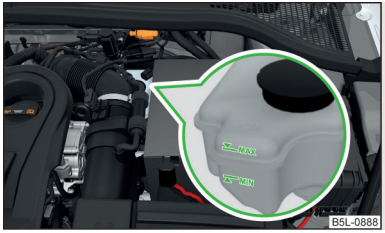


Fig. 163
Brake fluid reservoir

Check the brake fluid under the following conditions.

✓ The vehicle is on a horizontal surface.

✓ The engine is turned off.

Check brake fluid level - the brake fluid level must lie between the markings "MIN" and "MAX"» Fig. 163.

Specification - the brake fluid must comply with the standard **VW 501 14** (this standard meets the requirements of FMVSS 116 DOT4).

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 144.
- If the fluid level drops significantly within a short time or if it drops below the "MIN" » Fig. 163mark, this may be an indication of a leak in the brake system. Stop driving - There is a risk of an accident! Seek help from a specialist garage.

Note

- The brake fluid is changed as part of a compulsory inspection service.
- Too low brake fluid level is indicated by the warning light being shown on the display of the instrument cluster as well as the corresponding message » page 34. We still recommend inspecting the brake fluid level in the reservoir from time to time.

Vehicle battery

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Check condition 150
Charging 151
Disconnect/reconnect and change 151

The vehicle battery represents a power source for the motor to start and for the supply of electrical consumers in the car.

Automatic shutdown of consumers - vehicle battery discharge protection
The on-board power supply system tries to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging in the following ways when it is subject to heavy loading.

- By increasing the engine idle speed.
- Through the power limitation of certain consumers.
- By switching off some loads(heated seats, heated rear window) for as long as necessary.

Warning symbols on the vehicle battery

Symbol	Meaning
	Always wear eye protection.
	Battery acid is severely caustic. Always wear gloves and eye protection.
	Keep fire, sparks, open flames and lit cigarettes well clear of the vehicle battery.
	When charging the vehicle battery, a highly explosive gas mixture is produced.
	Keep children away from the vehicle battery.

WARNING

Battery acid is highly corrosive - There is a risk of injury, chemical burns or poisoning! Corrosive vapours in the air irritate and damage the respiratory tract and the eyes. The following guidelines must be observed.
- Always wear protective gloves, eye and skin protection when handling the vehicle battery.
- If your eyes or skin come into contact with the electrolytic fluid, immediately wash the affected area for a few minutes long with a lot of water. Seek medical assistance without delay.
- Keep the vehicle battery away from people who are not completely independent (e.g. children).
- Do not tilt the battery otherwise battery electrolyte may flow out of the battery vent openings.

WARNING

Working on the car battery may cause an explosion, fire, injury or chemical burns! The following guidelines must be observed.
- Do not smoke, use open flames or light or transmitting devices.
- **A discharged vehicle battery may freeze slightly.** Never charge up a frozen or thawed vehicle battery. Replace a frozen vehicle battery.
- Never use a damaged vehicle battery.
- Do not connect the battery terminals, bridging the two poles will cause a short circuit.

CAUTION

Ensure that battery acid does not come into contact with the bodywork – There is a risk of damage to the paintwork.

Note
- We recommend having all work on the vehicle battery carried out by a specialist garage.
- You should replace batteries older than 5 years.

Check condition

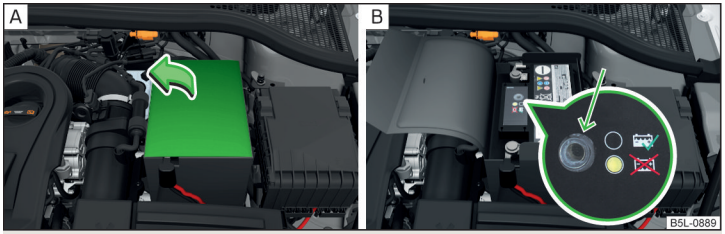


Fig. 164 **Vehicle battery: Open the cover / acid level indicator**

Read and observe and on page 150 first.

The battery condition is checked regularly by a specialist garage as part of the inspection service.

Check the acid level

For car batteries with acid level indicator, acidity can be checked on the basis of a colour display. In vehicle batteries with the label **"AGM"** there is no acid level examination.

Depending on the equipment, the vehicle battery may be provided with a cover, this can be opened in the direction of arrow » Fig. 164 - A.

Air bubbles can influence the colour of the indicator. Therefore, carefully knock on the display » Fig. 164 - B.

Black colour - electrolyte level is correct.

Colourless or light yellow colour - electrolyte level too low, the battery must be replaced.

Battery discharge
If frequent short journeys are made, the vehicle battery does not recharge sufficiently.

The battery capacity decreases at low temperatures.

If the vehicle is not used for longer than 3 to 4 weeks, disconnect the negative terminal ⊖ of the battery or charge the battery completely with a very low charging current.

Charging

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

Only charge the battery when the ignition and all consumers are switched off.

Refer to the instructions of the charger manufacturer.

Charging
- For vehicles **with**the START-STOPsystem or aux. heating, connect the ⊕ terminal of the charger on the battery's ⊕ pole, the ⊖ terminal of the charger to the earth point of the engine » page 163.
- For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem or aux. heating, connect the charger terminals to the corresponding battery poles (⊕ to ⊕, ⊖ to ⊖).
- Plug the mains cable of the charger into the power socket and switch on the device.
- After charging has been successful: Switch off the charger and remove the mains cable from the power socket.
- Disconnect the terminals of the charger from the vehicle battery.

A charging current of 0.1 multiple of the total vehicle battery capacity (or lower) must be used until full charging is achieved.

! WARNING
- When charging the vehicle battery, hydrogen is released - risk of explosion. An explosion can be caused through sparking while unclamping or loosening the cable plug.
- So-called"quick-charging" of the vehicle battery is **dangerous** and requires a special charger and specialist knowledge. We therefore recommend that "quick-charging" is carried out by a specialist garage.

Disconnect/reconnect and change

Read and observe ! and ! on page 150 first.

The new vehicle battery must have the same capacity, voltage, current and the same size as the original Battery.

We recommend you have the battery **replaced** by a specialist garage.

- To **disconnect**, switch off the ignition and disconnect the negative terminal first ⊖, then disconnect the positive terminal ⊕.
- When **reconnecting** the battery, reconnect the positive terminal ⊕ first, then connect the negative terminal ⊖.

After disconnecting and re-connecting the vehicle battery, the following functions or devices are partially or completely inoperative.

Function / device	Operating measure
Windows	» page 57
Panorama sliding/tilting roof	» page 59
Sun screen	» page 59
Time settings	» page 41

! CAUTION
- Disconnect the battery only with the ignition and consumers turned off - There is a risk of damaging the electrical system of the vehicle.
- Before disconnecting the battery, always close the electric windows and the tilt/slide sunroof - otherwise the fitting units for these may malfunction.
- Under no circumstances mix up the charging cables – There is a risk of fire.

i Note
After disconnecting and reconnecting the vehicle battery, we recommend having the vehicle checked by a specialist to ensure that the full functionality of the vehicle is guaranteed.

Wheels

Wheels and tyres

Advice on tyre/wheel usage

During the first 500 km, **new tyres** do not offer optimum grip; appropriate care should therefore be taken when driving.

Tyres with the deeper profiles should always be fitted to the front wheels.

Rims and wheel bolts are matched to each other in terms of design. We recommend that you use rims and wheel bolts from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheels and tyres should always be **stored** in a cool, dry and dark place. The tyres themselves should be stored vertically.

Tyre life
Tyres age and lose their original characteristics, even if they are not being used. We recommend that you do not use tyres that are more than 6 years old.

The manufacturing date is indicated on the tyre sidewall (possibly on the **inside**). For example, **DOT ... 10 16**means, for example, that the tyre was manufactured in the 10. week of 2016.

Tyre damage
We recommend checking your tyres and wheel rims for damage (punctures, cuts, splits and bulges etc.) on a regular basis.

Remove any foreign objects in the tyre's profile immediately (e.g. small stones).

Foreign bodies which **have penetrated into the tyre** (e.g. screws or nails) should not be removed and help should be sought from a specialist garage.

Fitting new tyres
Only fit approved radial tyres of the same type, size (rolling circumference) and the same tread pattern on one axle on all four wheels.

When mounting new tires the tires have to be replaced axle by axle.

Unidirectional tyres
The direction of rotation of the tyres is marked by **arrows on the wall of the tyre**.

The specified running direction must be strictly adhered to, otherwise the following tyre characteristics may be degraded.
- Driving stability.
- Traction.
- Tyre noise and tyre wear.

WARNING
- Never use tyres if you do not know anything about their condition and age There is a risk of accidents.
- Never drive with damaged tyres – risk of accident.

CAUTION
- The tyres must be protected from contact with substances (e.g. oil, grease and fuel) which could damage them. If the tyres come into contact with these substances, then we recommend you have this checked out in a specialist workshop.
- Do not use rims with ground or polished surfaces in winter conditions - there is a risk of rim damage (e.g through salt spreading).

Note
- We recommend that any work on the wheels or tyres be carried out by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that you use tyres, snow chains and full wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Tyre pressure

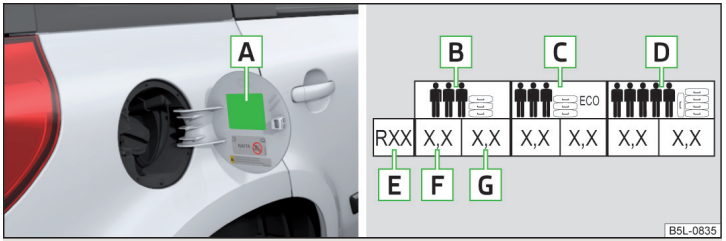


Fig. 165 **Label with a table of tyre sizes and tyre pressure value / inflate tyres**

The prescribed tyre inflation is on the sticker with pictograms A » Fig. 165 (for some countries, the pictograms are replaced with a text).

Tyre pressure is always to match the load.

B Inflation pressure for half load

C Inflation pressure for environmentally friendly operation (slightly lower fuel consumption and emissions)

D Inflation pressure for full load

E Tyre diameter in inches
This information serves merely as information for the prescribed tyre pressure. This is not a list of shared tyre sizes for your vehicle. These are in the vehicle's technical documentation, in the declaration of conformity (in so-called COC document) and listed on the vehicle data » page 177.

F Tyre pressure value on the front axle

G Tyre pressure value on the rear axle

Check tyre pressures
Check the tyre pressure, including that of the spare wheel, at least once a month and also before setting off on a long journey.

Always check the inflation pressure when the tyres are cold. Do not reduce the higher pressure of warm tyres.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, tyre pressure values must be saved each time the pressures are changed » page 125.

! WARNING

- Do not drive with incorrect tyre pressure - There is a risk of accident.
- In the event of very rapid pressure loss (e.g. in the event of tyre damage) an attempt should be made to bring the vehicle carefully to a stop without sudden steering movements and without any hard braking - risk of accident.

i Note

The declaration of conformity (COC document), can be obtained from a ŠKODA[1)] partner.

Tyre wear and wheel change

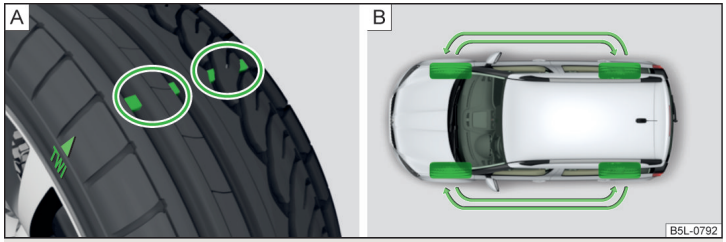


Fig. 166 **Tyre wear indicator / wheel change**

Tyre wear increases in the following circumstances.

- Incorrect tyre pressures.
- Driving style (e.g. fast cornering, rapid acceleration / braking).
- Incorrect wheel balancing (you should have the wheels balanced after changing/repair tyres or if the steering "is drifting").
- Wheel alignment errors.

There are **wear indicator markers**in the tyre profiles, indicating whether the minimum permissible tread depth has been reached» Fig. 166 - A. A tyre should be regarded as worn out when this indicator is flush with the tread. Markings on the walls of the tyres with the letters "TWI" and/or other symbols (e.g. △), identify the position of the wear indicators.

To ensure uniform wear on all tyres, we recommend that you **change** the **wheels** every 10 000 km, in line with the schedule» Fig. 166 - B.

! WARNING

- Change the tyres at the latest when they are worn down to the wear indicators -There is a risk of an accident.
- Faulty wheel alignment affects handling - There is a risk of an accident.
- Unusual vibrations or the vehicle "pulling " to one side could be a sign of tyre damage. Reduce speed and stop! If there are no external signs of tyre damage, seek the help of a specialist garage.

[1)] Only valid for some countries and some models.

Spare wheel

Only use this emergency spare wheel to reach the nearest specialist garage, as it is **not intended for permanent use**.

A warning label is always placed on the rim of the temporary spare wheel.

Please note the following if you intend to use the temporary spare wheel.
- ▸ Do not cover the warning sign.
- ▸ Be particularly observant when driving.
- ▸ Inflate the emergency spare to the maximum inflation pressure for the vehicle » page 152.

In vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 125.

WARNING
- Never drive with more than one spare wheel mounted!
- Avoid full throttle acceleration, sharp braking and fast cornering when driving with the temporary spare wheel.
- Do not use snow chains on the temporary spare wheel.
- Observe instructions on the warning sign of the emergency wheel.

Tyre marking

Explanation of tyre markings - e.g. 225/50 R 17 91 T

225	Tyre width in mm
50	Height/width ratio in %
R	Code letter for the type of tyre – **R**adial
17	Diameter of wheel in inches
91	Load index
T	Speed symbol

Load index - indicates the maximum permissible load for each individual tyre

Load index	90	91	92	93	94	95	97
Load (In kg)	600	615	630	650	670	690	730

Speed symbol - indicates the maximum permissible speed for a vehicle fitted with tyres in a given category

Speed symbol	S	T	U	H	V	W	Y
Maximum speed (in km/h)	180	190	200	210	240	270	300

WARNING

Never exceed the maximum permissible **load bearing capacity** and **speed** for the tyres fitted – There is a risk of accident.

Operating in winter conditions

All-year (or "winter") tyres

All-year or "winter"tyres (indicated by an **M+S** or a mountain peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) to improve the performance of the vehicle in winter conditions.

To get the best possible driving characteristics, all-year or "winter"tyres, with a minimum tread depth of 4 mm on all four wheels, should be fitted.

If "winter" tyres are mounted, summer tyres should be fitted again in good time as they provide better handling properties, a shorter braking distance, less tyre noise and reduced tyre wear on roads which are free of snow and ice as well as at temperatures above 7 °C.

Speed symbol
All-year or "winter"tyres (marked with **M+S** and a peak/snowflake symbol ⛷) of a lower speed category than listed in the vehicle's technical documentation can be used provided that the maximum permissible speed for these tyres is not exceeded even if the maximum possible speed of the vehicle is higher.

The speed limit for all-season or "winter"Tires can be adjusted in MAXI DOTDisplay in the menu item **winter tires** » page 45.

If the vehicle tires mounted are of a lower speed category than the specified top speed of the vehicle , then a warning label with the maximum value of the mounted tire speed rating must be attached inside the vehicle in a visible ▸

place in the driver's field of vision. If necessary, the maximum value of the mounted tire speed rating must be adjusted in the MAXI DOTDisplay in the menu item **winter tires** [1].

Snow chains

The snow chains improve handling in wintry road conditions.

Remove the full wheel trims before installing the snow chains » page 158.

Only fit snow chains with links and locks not larger than 12 mm.

The use of snow chains on vehicles with front-wheel drive and on vehicles with four-wheel drive differs.

Front-wheel drive
Snow chains must only be fitted on the front wheels and are applicable only to the following wheel / tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

All-wheel drive
Snow chains can be mounted on the wheels on the front and rear axles.

It is only permissible to fit snow chains on the front wheels with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
6J x 16	50 mm	205/55 R16
7J x 16	45 mm	205/55 R16
6J x 17	45 mm	205/50 R17

It is only permissible to fit snow chains on the rear wheels with the following wheel/tyre combinations.

Rim size	Press depth D	Tyre size
7J x 16	45 mm	215/60 R16
7J x 17	45 mm	225/50 R17

WARNING
Do not use chains on snow and ice-free routes - the handling would be impaired and there is a risk of damage to the tyres.

[1] Valid in certain countries.

Do-it-yourself

Emergency equipment and self-help

Emergency equipment

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle ____ 156
Location of reflective vest ____ 156
Fire extinguisher ____ 156
Vehicle tool kit ____ 157

Placement of the first aid kit and warning triangle

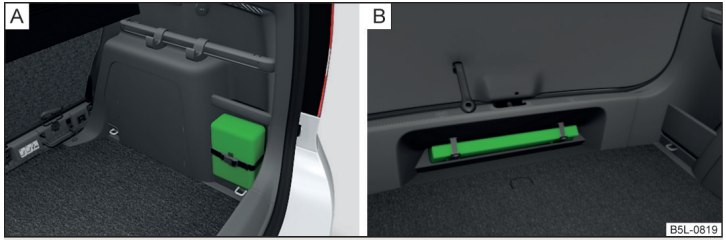


Fig. 167 **Location of the first-aid kit and the warning triangle**

The following information applies for the first aid kit and warning triangle from the ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Placing the first-aid kit
The first-aid box can be attached by a strap to the right-hand side of the boot » Fig. 167 - A.

Placing of the warning triangle
The warning triangle can be attached using the tensioning straps in the recess of the loading edge » Fig. 167 - B.

The warning triangle, which is included in the equipment with the spare wheel, can be stowed in a removable box on the right next to the spare wheel » page 93.

WARNING
Properly secure the first aid kit and the warning triangle - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Location of reflective vest



Fig. 168
Storage compartment for the reflective vest

The reflective vest can be stowed in a holder under the driver's seat » Fig. 168.

Fire extinguisher



Fig. 169
Release the fire extinguisher

The fire extinguisher is attached by two straps in a holder underneath the driver's seat.

› To **remove** the fire extinguisher, release the safety catches on the two belts in the direction of arrow » Fig. 169 and remove the fire extinguisher.
› To **secure**, place the fire extinguisher back in the mount and secure with the belts.

The Owner's Manual is fitted next to the fire extinguisher.

Pay attention to the expiration date of the fire extinguisher. After this date, the correct function of the device is not guaranteed.

WARNING

Always properly secure the fire extinguisher - there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

Vehicle tool kit

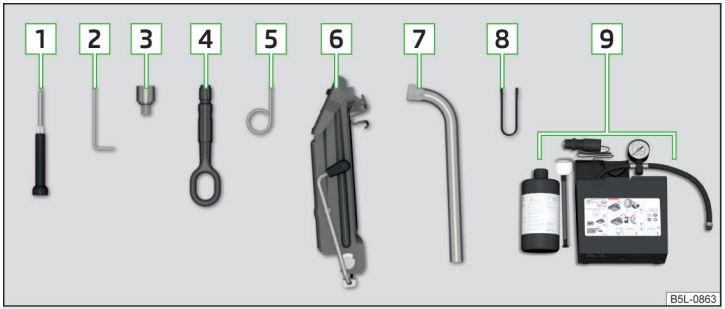


Fig. 170 **Vehicle tool kit**

The box containing the vehicle tool kit is located in the storage compartment for the spare wheel, and can be secured with a tape depending on the equipment fitted.

Depending on the vehicle configuration, it may not contain all the components listed in the on-board tool kit.

1 Screwdriver
2 Key for removing and installing the tail light
3 Top section for the anti-theft wheel bolts
4 Towing eye
5 Clamps for removing the wheel trims
6 Jack with sign
7 Wheel wrench
8 Extraction pliers for the wheel bolt caps
9 Breakdown kit

WARNING

- The factory-supplied lifting jack is only intended for your model of vehicle. Under no circumstances attempt to lift other vehicles or loads with it – there is a risk of injury.
- Always securely stow the tool in the box and make sure that it is secured to the spare wheel using the tape - Otherwise there is a risk of injury in the event of sudden braking or a vehicle collision.

CAUTION

Screw the jack back to its starting position prior to putting it back in its box - There is a risk of damage to the box.

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the jack or the log folder.

Changing a wheel

Preliminary work

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before changing a wheel on the road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1 gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. The passengers should not stand on the road while the wheel is being changed (they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Changing a wheel

› Remove the spare wheel » page 158.
› Remove the full wheel trim » page 158 or caps » page 159.
› Undo the anti-theft wheel bolt » page 159 and then the other wheel bolts » page 159».

› Jack up the vehicle until the wheel that needs changing is clear of the ground » page 160.
› Unscrew the wheel bolts and place them on a clean surface (cloth, paper, etc.).
› Remove the wheel carefully.
› Attach the spare wheel and slightly screw on the wheel bolts.
› Lower the vehicle.
› Tighten the wheel bolts opposite each other using the wheel wrench ("pulling crossways")» page 160.
› Replace the wheel trim » page 158 and caps » page 159.

When fitting unidirectional tyres, ensure that the direction of rotation is correct » page 152.

All bolts must be clean and must turn easily. If screws are corroded and difficult to move, these must be replaced.

WARNING

▪ Undo the wheel bolts just a little (about one turn), provided the vehicle has not yet been jacked up. Otherwise the wheel could come loose and fall off – risk of injury.
▪ Under no circumstances must the bolts be greased or oiled - cause an accident.

Subsequent steps

After changing the wheel, the following work must be carried out.

› Stow the replaced wheel in the well under the floor covering of the luggage compartment and secure with a locking screw.
› Stow the vehicle tool kit in the space provided.
› Check tyre pressure on the mounted wheel and adjust if necessary and, with vehicles with tyre pressure monitoring, save the tyre pressure values in the system » page 125.
› Have the tightening torque of the wheel bolts checked as soon as possible. The prescribed tightening torque is **120 Nm**.

Replace the damaged wheel or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

WARNING

Tightening torque which is too high can damage the threads and this can result in permanent deformation of the contact surfaces on the rim. Where tightening torque is too low, the wheels may become loose while driving - There is a risk of an accident. Therefore drive cautiously and only at a moderate speed until the tightening torque has been checked.

Removing /stowing the spare wheel



Fig. 171
Take out the wheel

The spare wheel is located in a well under the floor covering in the luggage compartment and is fixed in place with a fastening screw.

Take out the wheel

› Lift up the floor in the luggage compartment.
› Unscrew the locking screw in the direction of arrow » Fig. 171 and the remove the wheel.
› Remove the box with the tool kit.

Store wheel away

› Store the box for the vehicle tools in the same place.
› Place the wheel into the wheel well with the wheel rim pointing downwards.
› Screw the locking screw against the direction of arrow until it stops » Fig. 171.
› Fold back the floor in the luggage compartment.

Full wheel trim

Remove trim

› Hang the clamps for removing the full wheel trims on the edge of the full wheel trim.
› Push the wheel wrench through the clamp, support on the tyre and pull off the wheel trim.

Install trim

› Press the wheel trim onto the wheel rim at the designated valve opening.
› Then press the trim into the wheel rim until its entire circumference locks correctly in place.

The position of the anti-theft wheel bolt is indicated by means of a symbol on the back of the wheel trim supplied ex-factory or from the ŠKODA Original Accessories. If using the anti-theft wheel bolt it should be fitted at this point » !.

WARNING

If wheel trims are fitted, an adequate flow of air must be assured in order to cool the brake system - otherwise there is a risk of an accident.

CAUTION

- If the wheel trim is positioned outside the position marked for the anti-theft wheel bolt, there is a risk of damaging the wheel cover.
- Only use manual pressure and do not hit the full wheel trim – there is a risk of damaging the trim.

Note

We recommend that you use wheel trims from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Wheel bolts



Fig. 172
Remove the cap

› To **remove the cap**, insert the extraction pliers as far as they will go on the cap and pulling them out in the direction of arrow » Fig. 172.
› To **install**, insert the cap onto the wheel bolt as far as it will go.

Anti-theft wheel bolts

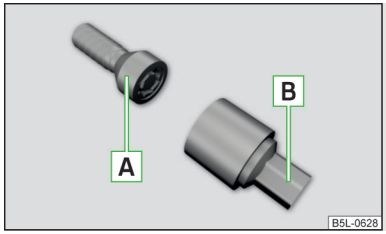


Fig. 173
Anti-theft wheel bolt and attachment

The anti-theft wheel bolts protect the wheels from theft. This can only be B with attachment » Fig. 173**loosened / tightened**.

› Insert the attachment B » Fig. 173 as far as it will go on the anti-theft wheel bolt A.
› Insert the key as far as it will go onto attachment B and loosen / tighten the wheel bolt.
› Remove the attachment.

The attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts must always be kept in the vehicle in case of a possible wheel change.

For wheel trims supplied ex-factory or from ŠKODA Original Accessories, the anti-theft wheel bolt should be installed in the position marked on the back of the wheel trim» page 158.

Note

The attachment and the anti-theft wheel bolts are provided with a code number. A replacement attachment can be ordered from ŠKODA Genuine Accessories using this.

Loosening/tightening wheel bolts



Fig. 174
Loosening the wheel bolts

› Insert the wheel wrench onto the wheel bolt to the stop. Use the associated attachment for the anti-theft wheel bolts » Fig. 173 *on page 159*.
› To **loosen the screws**, grasp the key end and turn the screw about **one** turn rotation in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174.
› To**tighten the screws**, grasp the key end and turn the screw about against the direction of the arrow » Fig. 174, until it is tight.

WARNING

If it proves difficult to undo the bolts, carefully apply pressure to the end of the wrench with your **foot**. Keep hold of the vehicle when doing so, and make sure you keep your footing - danger of injury.

Raising the vehicle

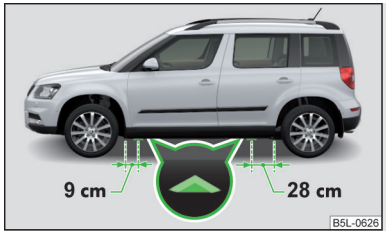


Fig. 175
Jacking points for the jack

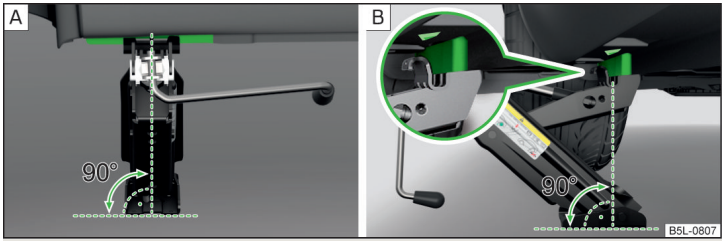


Fig. 176 **Attach lifting jack**

Before the vehicle is raised, please take note of the safety instructions ».

Use the jack from the tool kit to raise the vehicle. Position the car jack at the jacking point closest to the flat tyre.

The runner connectors for the jack are located directly below the marking on the lower loading edge of the vehicle » Fig. 175.

› Position the base plate of the jack with its full area resting on level ground and ensure that the jack will fit in the jacking point when raised » Fig. 176 - A.
› Use the crank to raise the jack until its pawl covers the jacking point» Fig. 176- B.
› Raise the vehicle until the wheel is a little off the floor.

WARNING

The following instructions must be observed, otherwise there is risk of injury.
- Ensure the vehicle cannot unexpectedly roll away.
- Always ensure the base plate of the lifting jack cannot slip.
  - Place a wide and stable base material under the jack if on a loose surfaces (e.g. gravel).
  - Place an anti-slip base material (e.g. a rubber mat) under the jack if on a smooth surface (e.g. cobblestones).
- Always raise the vehicle with the doors closed.
- Never position any body parts (e.g. arms or legs) under the vehicle while the vehicle is raised.
- When the vehicle is raised, never start the engine.

CAUTION

It is important to ensure that the jack is correctly positioned against the bar of the lower beam - otherwise there is a risk of damage to the vehicle.

Breakdown kit

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Description of the breakdown kit ____ 161
Preparing to use the breakdown kit ____ 162
Sealing and inflating tyres ____ 162
Information on driving with repaired tyres ____ 162

The following information applies for the breakdown kit supplied ex-factory.

The breakdown kit can be used to seal punctures with a diameter of up to about 4 mm.

Performing a repair with the breakdown kit **not at all intended to replace** a permanent repair on the tyre. Its purpose is to get you to the nearest specialist garage.

Replace the tyre that was repaired using the breakdown kit as soon as possible, or consult a specialist garage about repair options.

Do not remove foreign bodies which have penetrated into the tyre (e.g. nails).

Do not use the breakdown kit in the following cases.
- The rim is damaged.
- The outside temperature is below -20 ° C.
- Tyre punctures greater than 4 mm.
- Damage to the tyre wall.
- The use-by date (see inflation bottle) has passed.

WARNING

- If there is skin contact with the sealant wash the affected area immediately.
- Observe the manufacturer's usage instructions for the breakdown kit.

Description of the breakdown kit

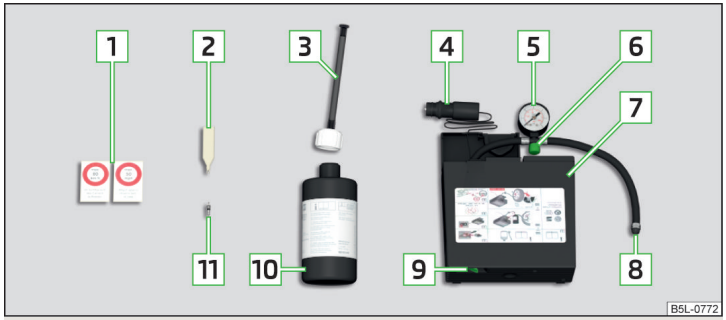


Fig. 177 **Description of the breakdown kit**

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

The kit is located in a box under the floor covering in the luggage compartment.

1. Sticker with speed designation "max. 80 km/h"/"max. 50 mph"
2. Valve remover
3. Inflation hose with plug
4. 12 volt cable connector
5. Tyre inflation pressure indicator
6. Screw for tyre pressure reduction
7. Air compressor (the layout of the controls may be different depending on the type of air compressor delivered with the vehicle)
8. Tyre inflation hose
9. ON and OFF switch
10. Tyre inflator bottle with sealing agent
11. Replacement valve core

Note

The declaration of conformity is included with the air compressor or the log folder.

Preparing to use the breakdown kit

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

For safety's sake, the following instructions must be observed before undertaking a wheel repair on a road.

› Park the vehicle as far as possible away from the traffic flow - choose a place with a flat and firm surface.
› Switch off the engine.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, select **1. gear**.
› For vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Switch on the hazard warning lights and set up the warning triangle at the prescribed distance.
› Have **all the occupants get out**. While the repair is being carried out, the passengers should not stand on the road (instead they should remain behind a crash barrier, for instance).
› Uncouple any trailers.

Sealing and inflating tyres

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

Sealing

› Unscrew the valve cap from the damaged tyre.
› Insert the valve remover 2 » Fig. 177 *on page 161* on the valve insert, so that the valve insert fits into the slot of the valve remover.
› Unscrew the valve insert and place it on a clean base (rag, paper etc.).
› Forcefully shake bottle 10 » Fig. 177 *on page 161* several times.
› Firmly screw the inflation hose 3 onto the tyre inflater bottle 10. The film on the bottle cap is pierced.
› Remove the plug from the inflation hose 3 and insert the bottle onto the tyre valve.
› Hold the bottle 10 with the bottom facing upwards and fill all of the sealing agent from the tyre inflator bottle into the tyre.
› Remove the filler plug from the tyre valve.
› Screw in the valve insert with the valve remover 2.

Inflating

› Screw the tyre inflation hose 8 » Fig. 177 *on page 161* firmly onto the tyre valve.
› For vehicles with **manual transmission**, set the lever in the neutral position.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, place the selector lever in the **P** position.
› Check that the screw for the tire pressure reduction 6 is closed.
› Start the engine.
› Plug the connector 4 into 12 volt socket » page 81.
› Switch on the air compressor with the ON and OFF switch 9.
› Once tyre inflation pressure of 2.0-2.5 bar has been reached, turn off the air compressor. Maximum run time of 6 minutes » !.
› If you cannot reach an air pressure of 2.0 - 2.5 bar, unscrew the tyre inflation hose 8 from the tyre valve.
› Drive the vehicle 10 metres forwards or backwards to allow the sealing agent to "distribute" in the tyre.
› Firmly screw the tyre inflation hose 8 back onto the tyre valve and repeat the inflation process.
› Stick the sticker 1 » Fig. 177 *on page 161* on the dashboard in the driver's field of view.

At a tyre inflation pressure of 2.0–2.5 bar, the journey can be continued at a maximum speed of 80 km/h or 50 mph.

! WARNING

▪ If the tire does not inflate at least. 2.0 bar, the damage is too great. The sealing agent cannot be used to seal the tyre. STOP Stop driving! Seek help from a specialist garage.
▪ The tyre inflation hose and air compressor may get hot as the tyre is being inflated – risk of burning.

! CAUTION

Switch off the air compressor if it has been running for as much as 6 minutes – There is a risk of damage to the compressor! Allow the air compressor to cool a few minutes before switching it on again.

Information on driving with repaired tyres

Read and observe ! on page 161 first.

The inflation pressure of the repaired tyre must be checked after driving for 10 minutes.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or less

› The tyre cannot be properly sealed with the breakdown kit. STOP **Stop driving!** Seek help from a specialist garage.

If the tyre inflation pressure is 1.3 bar or more

› Set the tyre pressure back to the correct value » page 152.
› Continue driving carefully to the nearest specialist garage at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph).

WARNING

A tyre filled with sealant has the same driving characteristics as a standard tyre. The following guidelines must be observed.
- Do not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Avoid accelerating at full throttle, sharp braking and fast cornering.

Jump-starting

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle ____ 163

WARNING

- The following instructions must be followed at all times when working on the engine compartment » page 144.
- When handling the vehicle battery, the following warnings must be observed » page 149.
- A discharged vehicle battery may already freeze at temperatures just below 0 °C. If the battery is frozen, do not carry out a jump start with the battery of another vehicle – There is a risk of explosion and injury!
- Never jump-start vehicle batteries with an electrolyte level that is too low – There is a risk of explosion and caustic burns!

Jump-starting using the battery from another vehicle

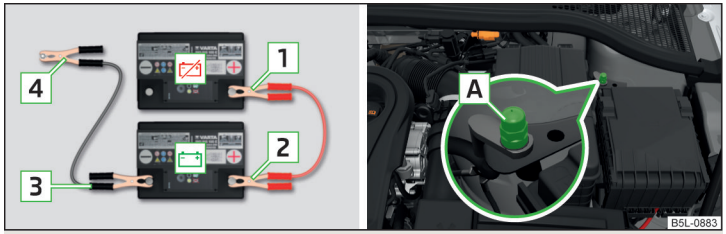


Fig. 178 **Jump-starting: - Discharged battery, - power-supplying battery / ground point of the engine for the START-STOP system**

Read and observe ! on page 163 first.

If, because of a discharged battery, it is not possible to start the engine, the battery of another vehicle can be used to start the engine. To do this, jump-start cables are required which have a sufficiently large cross-section and insulated terminal clamps.

The **rated voltage** of the two batteries must be 12 V. The **capacity** (Ah) of the power-supplying battery must not be significantly lower than the capacity of the discharged battery.

The jump-start cables must be attached in the following sequence.

› Attach clamp 1 to the positive terminal of the discharged battery.
› Attach clamp 2 to the positive terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› Attach clamp 3 to the negative terminal of the power-supplying battery.
› For vehicles **with** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to the earth point of the engine A » Fig. 178.
› For vehicles **without** the START-STOPsystem, attach clamp 4 to a solid metal part firmly attached to the engine block or directly to the engine block.

Starting engine

› Start the engine on the vehicle providing the power and allow it to idle.
› Initiate the starting process in the vehicle with the discharged battery.
› If the engine does not start within 10 s, then cancel the starting procedure and repeat after half a minute.
› Remove the jump start cables in the **reverse** order as attachment.

WARNING

- Never clamp the jump cable to the negative terminal of the discharged battery -There is a risk of an explosion.
- The non-insulated parts of the terminal clamps must never touch each other – risk of short circuit!
- The jump-start cable connected to the positive terminal of the battery must not come into contact with electrically conducting parts of the vehicle – risk of short circuit!
- Position the jump cables so that they cannot be caught in rotating parts in the engine compartment - danger of injuries and the risk of vehicle damage.

Towing the vehicle

Information about the towing process

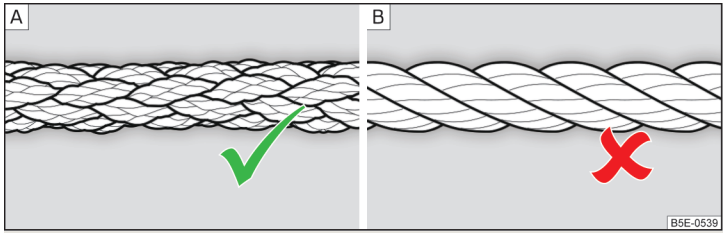


Fig. 179 **Braided tow rope / Spiral tow rope**

To tow with a tow rope, only use a braided synthetic fibre rope » Fig. 179 - A» !.

Attach the tow rope or the tow bar to the **towing eyes at the front** » page 165, **towing eyes at the rear** » page 165 or to the **towing device of the trailer device** » page 126.

Conditions for towing.

✓ **Cars with automatic gearboxes must not be towed with the rear wheels raised - there is a risk of gearbox damage!**

✓ If the gearbox has no oil, your vehicle must be towed with the front axle raised clear of the ground or on a breakdown vehicle or trailer.

✓ The maximum towing speed is **50 km/h**.

✓ The vehicle must be transported on a special breakdown vehicle or trailer if it is not possible to tow in the vehicle in the way described or if the towing distance is greater than 50 km.

Driver of the tow vehicle

› On vehicles with **manual transmission**, engage gear slowly when starting.
› On vehicles with **automatic transmission**, accelerate with particular care.
› Only then approach correctly when the rope is taut.

Driver of the towed vehicle

› If possible, the vehicle should be towed with the engine running. The brake booster and power steering only operate if the engine is running, otherwise much greater force has to be applied to the brake pedal and more power has to be expended for steering.
› If it is not possible to start the engine, switch on the ignition so that the steering wheel does not lock and so that the turn signal lights, windscreen wipers and windscreen washer system can be used.
› Take the vehicle out of gear or move the selector lever into position **N** if the vehicle is fitted with an automatic gearbox.
› Keep the tow rope taut at all times during the towing procedure.

WARNING

- Spiral tow ropes must not be used for towing » Fig. 179- B, the towing eye may unscrew out of the vehicle - There is a risk of an accident.
- Ensure tow rope is not twisted - risk of accident.

CAUTION

- Do not tow-start the engine – There is a risk of damaging the engine. The battery from another vehicle can be used as a jump-start aid » page 163, *Jump-starting*.
- For off-road towing manoeuvres, there is a risk to both vehicles that the fasteners may become overloaded and damaged.

Note

We recommend that you use a tow rope from ŠKODA Original Accessories.

Front towing eye



Fig. 180 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 180.

› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 180 until it clicks into place» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Towing eye rear



Fig. 181 **Remove cap / install towing eye**

Cap removal/fitting

› To **remove**, press down on the cap in the direction of arrow 1 and remove it in the direction of arrow 2 » Fig. 181.

› To **fit** it, insert the cap in arrow range 1 and then press on the opposite edge of the cap. The cap must engage firmly.

Removing/installing the towing eye

› To **fit**, screw in the towing eye by hand in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 181 until it clicks into place» !.

For tightening purposes, we recommend, for example, using the wheel wrench, towing eye from another vehicle or a similar object that can be pushed through the eye.

› To **remove**it, unscrew the towing eye in the opposite direction to arrow 3.

Vehicles with a trailer device

For vehicles with factory-fitted towing device, at the back there is no mount for a screw-in towing eye. Use the detachable ball rod for towing » page 126, *Hitch*.

! WARNING

The towing eye must always be firmly in place, otherwise the towing eye could break whilst being towed.

Remote control and removable light - replacing the battery/batteries

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Key with fold-out key bit ____ 166
Remote control of the auxiliary heating ____ 166
Removable light ____ 166

CAUTION

- The replacement battery/batteries must comply with the original specification.
- Pay attention to the correct polarity when changing the rechargeable batteries.

Note

- We recommend having the faulty battery/batteries replaced by a specialist garage.
- If a key has an affixed decorative cover, this will be destroyed when the battery is replaced. A replacement cover can be purchased from a ŠKODA Partner.

Key with fold-out key bit



Fig. 182 **Remove cover/take out battery**

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

› Pop out the key bit.
› Press off the battery cover A » Fig. 182 with your thumb or by using a screwdriver in the area of arrow 1.
› Remove the discharged battery in the direction of arrow 2 and install a new battery.
› Insert the battery cover A and press it down until it clicks audibly into place.

Remote control of the auxiliary heating

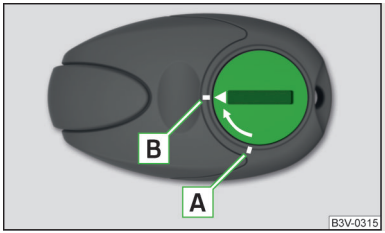


Fig. 183
Radio remote control: Battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

› Insert a flat, blunt object, such as a coin, into the gap of the battery cover» Fig. 183.
› Turn the cover away from the marked arrow direction up to the mark A to open the cover.
› Replace the battery and reinstall the battery cover.
› Rotate the cover in the direction of the arrow marked up to the mark B to close the cover.

Removable light

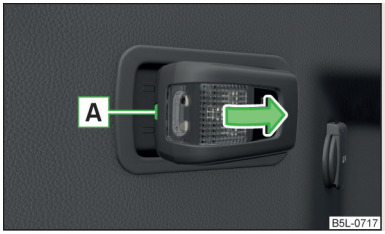


Fig. 184
Locking clip on the battery cover

Read and observe ! on page 166 first.

› Take out the light in the direction of arrow » Fig. 184.

› Lever off the cover for the rechargeable batteries with a narrow and pointed object from the area of the lock clips A.
› Replace the batteries.
› Insert the cover for the rechargeable batteries and press it down until it clicks into place.

CAUTION

If an incorrect battery type is used or a non-rechargeable battery, there is a risk of damaging the light and the vehicle's electrical system.

Emergency unlocking / unlocking of doors

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Unlocking/locking the driver's door 167
Locking the door without locking cylinders 167
Unlock the boot lid 167
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 168

Unlocking/locking the driver's door

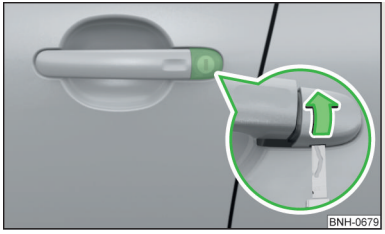


Fig. 185
Handle on the driver's door: Opening lock cover

The driver's door can be emergency unlocked / emergency locked using the key via the lock cylinder.

› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Insert the key into the recess on the lower side of the cover and fold up » Fig. 185 in the direction of arrow.
› Release the door handle.
› Insert the vehicle key bit into the lock cylinder and unlock or lock the vehicle.
› Pull on the door handle and hold.
› Replace the cover.

CAUTION

Make sure you do not damage the paint when performing an emergency locking/unlocking.

Locking the door without locking cylinders

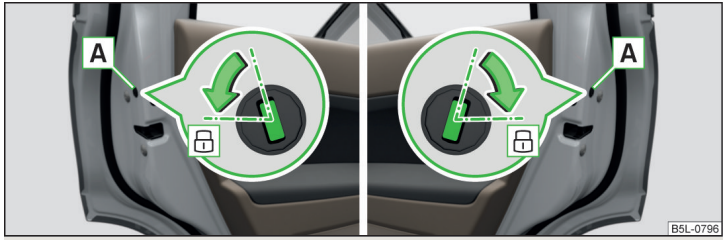


Fig. 186 **Emergency locking: Left/right rear door**

› Open the corresponding back door remove the trim A » Fig. 186.
› Insert the key into the slot and turn in the direction of the arrow (spring-loaded position).
› Replace the cover A.

After closing, the door is locked.

Unlock the boot lid



Fig. 187
Unlocking the door

The boot lid can be unlocked manually from inside the vehicle.

› Insert a screwdriver or similar tool into the opening in the trim» Fig. 187 as far as the latch.
› Unlock the lid by moving it in the direction of the arrow.

Selector lever-emergency unlocking

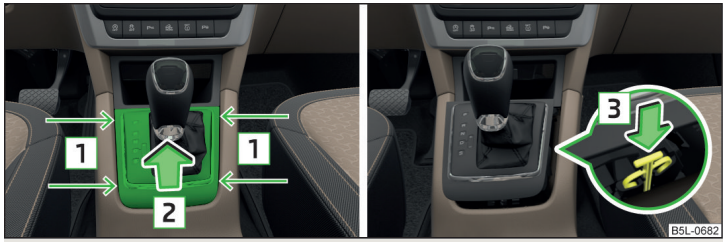


Fig. 188 **Remove / release the selector lever**

› Firmly apply the handbrake.
› Insert a slot screwdriver or similar tool into the gap in the arrow area 1 » Fig. 188 and lift the cover in arrow direction 2.
› Press on the yellow plastic part in the direction of arrow 3, simultaneously press the lock button in the selector lever handle and put the lever in position **N**.

If the selector lever is moved again to position **P**, it is once again blocked.

CAUTION

Make sure when lifting not to damage cover parts by the screwdriver in the shift lever environment.

Replacing windscreen wiper blades

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades ____ 168
Replacing the rear window wiper blade ____ 169

WARNING

Replace the windscreen wiper blades once or twice a year for safety reasons.

Replacing the windscreen wiper blades

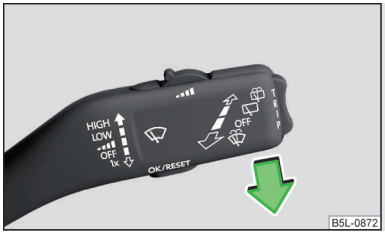


Fig. 189
Setting the service position for the wiper arms



Fig. 190 **Changing the windscreen wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 168 first.

Before replacing the windscreen wiper blades, close the bonnet and put the windscreen wiper arms into the service position.

Setting the service position

› Switch the ignition on and off again.
› Push the lever in the direction of arrow » Fig. 189 within 10 seconds and hold for approximately 2 seconds.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm from the windscreen in the direction of 1 » Fig. 190.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.
› Turn on the ignition and press the lever in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 189.

The windscreen wiper arms move into the home position.

Replacing the rear window wiper blade



Fig. 191 **Changing the rear window wiper blade**

Read and observe ! on page 168 first.

Removing the wiper blade

› Lift the wiper arm » page 169 from the window in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 191.
› Tilt the wiper blade to the stop in the same direction.
› Grip the wiper arm and press securing latch A down in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow 3.

Attaching the windscreen wiper blade

› Slide the windscreen wiper blade in the opposite direction to arrow 3 until it locks into place. Check that the windscreen wiper blade is correctly attached.
› Fold the windscreen wiper arm back to the windscreen.

Fuses and light bulbs

Fuses

Introduction

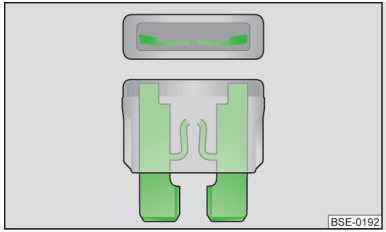


Fig. 192
Blown fuse

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Fuses in the dashboard 170
Fuse arrangement in the dashboard 170
Fuses in the engine compartment 171
Fuse arrangement in the engine compartment 171

Individual electrical circuits are protected by fuses. A blown fuse is recognisable from the melted-through metal strip » Fig. 192.

! WARNING

Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 144.

! CAUTION

- Replace the faulty fuse with a new one of the **same** amperage.
- If a newly inserted fuse again blows after a short time, then seek assistance from a specialist garage.
- "Do not repair" the fuses and do not replace them with stronger fuses - There is a risk of fire and damage to another electrical system.

i Note

- We recommend always carrying replacement fuses in the vehicle.
- There can be several power consuming devices for one fuse. Multiple fuses may exist for a single power consuming device.

Fuses in the dashboard



Fig. 193
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

The fuses are located on the left side of the dash panel behind a cover.

Replacing fuses

› Remove the ignition key, turn off the lights and all electrical consumers.
› Insert a screwdriver into the opening in the cover in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 193.
› Remove the cover of the fuse box and remove.
› Remove the plastic clip from the holder in the fuse box cover in the dash panel.
› Use the clip to pull the fuse out, then insert a new fuse.
› Re-insert the cover of the fuse box .
› Replace the bracket at the original position.

Fuse arrangement in the dashboard

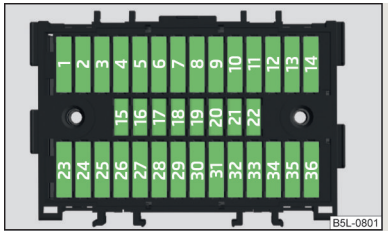


Fig. 194
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Heating of the gearbox vent (diesel engine) Automatic gearbox
2	Towing hitch - left light
3	Trailer device - electrical outlet
4	Instrument cluster control lever under the steering wheel, camera
5	Air blower for heating, radiator fan, air conditioning system, Climatronic
6	Rear window wiper
7	emergency call
8	Towing hitch - right light
9	Interior lighting, rear fog light
10	Rain sensor, light switch, diagnostic socket
11	Left side front headlight
12	Right side front headlight
13	Radio
14	Central control system, engine management system
15	Light switch
16	All-wheel drive
17	KESSY, steering lock
18	Diagnostic connector, engine control system, brake sensor, four-wheel drive, START-STOP
19	ABS, ESP, switch for tyre air pressure control, parking aid, switch for OFF ROAD mode, START STOP button
20	Airbag
21	Variable Service Interval - WIV, reversing lamps, dimmable mirrors, pressure sensor, telephone preparation, air mass meter, headlamp levelling and swivelling headlights
22	Instrument cluster, electromechanical power steering, databus
23	Central locking, boot lid
24	Electric windows - Rear
25	Rear window heater, auxiliary heating and ventilation
26	Power socket in the boot

No.	Consumer
27	Panoramic tilt / slide sunroof, electric operation of sun blinds
28	Fuel pump, injectors, AdBlue® heating
29	Electric windows - front, outside mirror - Heating, fold-in function, Adjusting the mirror surface
30	12 volt power outlet - front and rear
31	Headlight cleaning system
32	Heated front seats
33	Heating, air conditioning, Climatronic, remote control for auxiliary heating
34	Car alarm, reserve horn
35	Automatic gearbox
36	Tow hitch

Fuses in the engine compartment

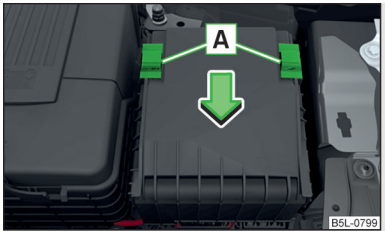


Fig. 195
Distribution board cover.

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

With some equipment, the battery cover must be opened before removing the cover for the fuse box » page 150.

Replacing fuses

› Turn the securing bracket A » Fig. 195 in direction of the arrow. The symbol is displayed behind the catches.
› Remove the cover.
› Replace the appropriate fuse.
› Replace the cover on the fuse box and the safety clip A move against the arrow. The symbol is displayed behind the catches.

! CAUTION

The cover of the fuse box in the engine compartment must always be used correctly, otherwise water may penetrate into the fuse box – there is a risk of damage to the vehicle!

Fuse arrangement in the engine compartment

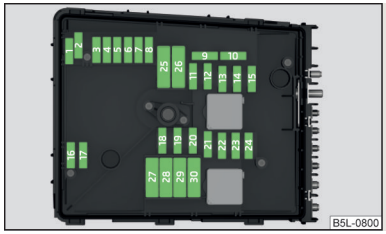


Fig. 196
Fuses

Read and observe ! and ! on page 169 first.

No.	Consumer
1	Not assigned
2	Automatic gearbox, AdBlue control system
3	Battery data module
4	ABS
5	Automatic gearbox
6	Not assigned
7	Power supply for terminal 15, starter
8	Radio, instrument cluster, telephone
9	Not assigned
10	Engine control system
11	Aux. heating and ventilation
12	Databus
13	Engine control system
14	Ignition
15	Lambda probe, fuel pump, glow plug system
16	Right headlight, right taillight
17	Horn

No.	Consumer
18	Music amplifier
19	Windscreen wipers
20	Control valve for fuel pressure, high pressure pump
21	Lambda probe
22	Clutch pedal switch, brake pedal switch
23	Coolant pump, loading pressure control valve, switchover valve for radiator, fuel pump
24	Active charcoal filter, exhaust gas recirculation valve, radiator fan
25	ABS
26	Left front headlight, left taillight
27	Glow plug system
28	Windscreen heater
29	Power to the internal fuse carrier (fuses no. 24,27,31,32), electrically adjustable seats
30	Terminal X[a)]

[a)] In order not to drain the battery unnecessarily when starting the engine, the electrical components of this terminal are automatically switched off.

Bulbs

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights 173
Changing bulbs for low and main beam (Halogen headlights) 173
Remove protective guard for foglights 173
Protective grille for removing fog lights- plug for Park Assist sensor 174
Changing light bulbs for fog lights 174
Changing the bulb for the licence plate light 175
Removing/installing taillights 175
Replacing the bulbs in the taillight assembly 176

We recommend having bulbs replaced by a specialist garage or seeking other expert help in the event of any uncertainties.

- Switch off the ignition and all of the lights before replacing a bulb.
- Faulty bulbs must only be replaced with the same type of bulbs. The designation is located on the light socket or the glass bulb.

We recommend having the headlight settings checked by a specialist garage after replacing a bulb in the low, high or fog beam.

In the case of failure of a Xenon gas discharge bulb or an LED diode, visit a specialist garage.

WARNING

- Always read and observe the warnings before completing any work in the engine compartment » page 144.
- Accidents can be caused if the road in front of the vehicle is not sufficiently illuminated and the vehicle cannot or can only be seen with difficulty by other road users.
- Bulbs H7 and H4 are pressurised and may burst when changed - there is a risk of injury. We therefore recommended wearing gloves and safety glasses when changing a bulb.
- Do not carry out any work on the Xenon gas discharge lamps - risk of death!

CAUTION

Do not take hold of the glass bulb with naked fingers (even the smallest amount of dirt reduces the working life of the light bulb). Use a clean cloth, napkin, or similar.

Note

- This Owner's Manual only describes the replacement of bulbs where it is possible to replace the bulbs on your own without any complications arising. Other bulbs must be replaced by a specialist garage.
- We recommend that a box of replacement bulbs always be carried in the vehicle.

Bulb arrangement in the front headlights

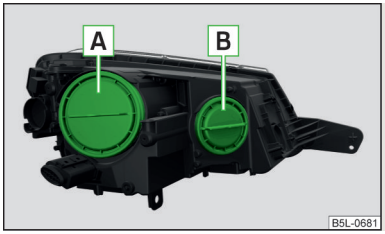


Fig. 197
Left headlight

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

Bulb arrangement » Fig. 197

A Low beam with halogen bulb or Xenon gas discharge bulb
B Main beam

Changing bulbs for low and main beam (Halogen headlights)

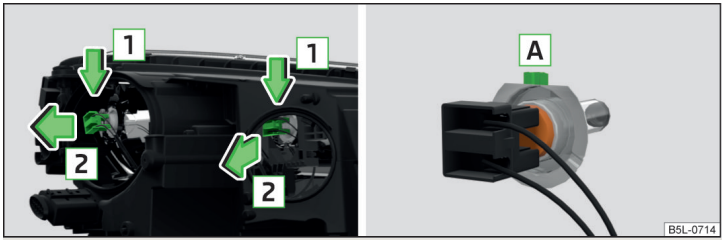


Fig. 198 **Replacing the bulb for low beam and main beam**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

› Turn the respective protective cap » Fig. 197 *on page 173* counter-clockwise and remove.

When removing the cap, make sure that this does not fall into the engine compartment.

› Disconnect the relevant connector with the light bulb in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 198.
› Remove the connector to the bulb in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the connector.
› Insert the connector with the new bulb so that the fixing lug A fits on the bulb» Fig. 198 into the recess on the reflector.
› Insert the respective protective cap » Fig. 197 *on page 173* and rotate it clockwise until it stops.

Note

We recommend you have the bulb replacement performed by a specialist garage.

Remove protective guard for foglights

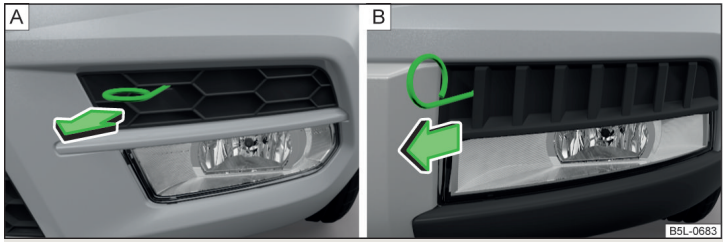


Fig. 199 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

› Undo the protective grille in the direction of the arrow » Fig. 199 using the clamp for removing the wheel trims.
› Remove the protective grille.

Protective grille for removing fog lights- plug for Park Assist sensor

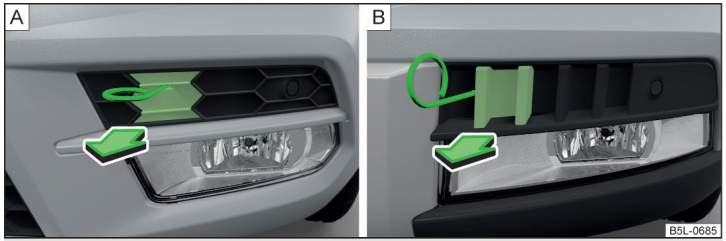


Fig. 200 **Guard: Version 1/version 2**

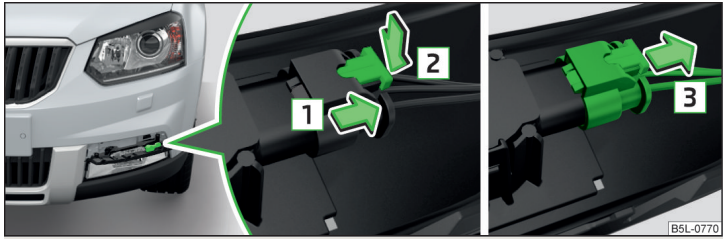


Fig. 201 **Remove the plug**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

› Remove the plastic cover for the guard in the arrow direction » Fig. 200 using the bow to pull the full wheel covers.
› Remove the remaining part of the grille.
› Pull the latch out of the connector in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 201.
› Undo the latch on the connector in the direction of arrow 2.
› Remove the key in the direction of the arrow 3.

Insertion of the ashtray takes place in reverse order.

Changing light bulbs for fog lights



Fig. 202 **Remove the number plate light / replace the bulb**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

First remove the grille for the fog lights and before changing bulbs » Fig. 199 *on page 173* and / or » Fig. 200 *on page 174*.

Removing the headlight
› Unscrew the screws A » Fig. 202 with the screwdriver from the tool kit.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 1.
› Remove the headlight in the direction of arrow 2.

Replacing the light bulb
› Pull the plug on the lamp base.
› Turn the socket with the bulb to the stop in the direction of the arrow 3 » Fig. 202.
› Insert the new bulb into the headlight and turn counter to the direction of arrow 3 as far as the stop.
› Attach the connector on the lamp base.

Refit the headlight and grille
› Replace the fog light by inserting it in the opposite direction of the arrow 2 » Fig. 202 and tighten.
› Attach the connector on guard carefully » Fig. 201 *on page 174*[1)].
› Insert the protective grille and press it in.
› Replace the plastic cover and press into the guard » Fig. 200 *on page 174*[1)].

The protective grille must engage firmly.

[1)] Applies to vehicles with parking assistance system.

CAUTION

For vehicles with parking assistance, we recommend that after changing the light bulb in the fog lights, the system is checked by a specialist.

Changing the bulb for the licence plate light

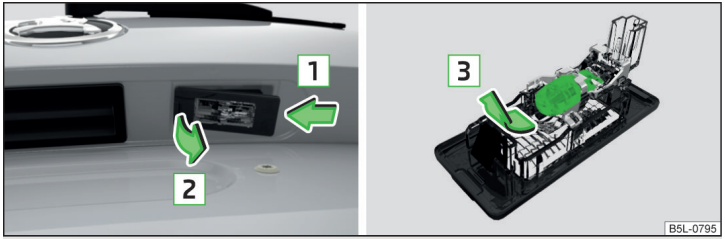


Fig. 203 **Remove / replace the bulb for the number plate light**

Read and observe and on page 172 first.

› Open the boot lid.
› Push the light in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 203 until it comes loose.
› Swivel out the lamp in the direction of the arrow 2 and remove it.
› Remove the faulty bulb from the holder in the direction of the arrow 3.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder.
› Reinsert the lamp in the opposite direction to the arrow 1.
› Push on the light until the spring clicks into place.
› Close the boot lid.

Removing/installing taillights

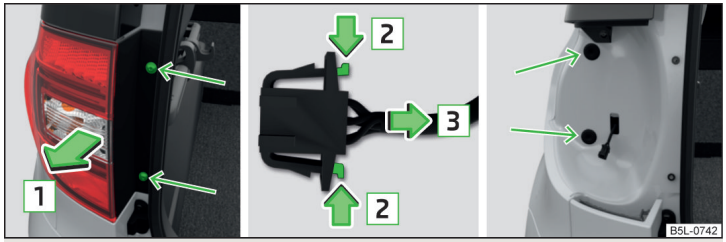


Fig. 204 **Remove light / pull out connector**

Read and observe and on page 172 first.

Removing

› Open the boot lid.
› Use the screwdriver from the tool kit to unscrew the lamp » Fig. 204.
› Grasp the light and carefully remove with shaky movements in the direction of arrow 1 » Fig. 204.
› Disconnect the plug connection by pressing the catches in direction of arrow 2 and by pulling them in direction of arrow 3.

Fitting

› Insert the connector into the light and lock it securely.
› Insert the light into the mounts in the body » Fig. 204.
› Carefully press the light into the body so that the bolts 1 » Fig. 205 *on page 176* or » Fig. 206 *on page 176* on the light engage into the mounts on the body».
› Screw the light with the screws into place » Fig. 204.
› Close the boot lid.

CAUTION

Ensure that the vehicle paintwork and the tail lamp are not damaged when removing and installing the tail lamp.

Replacing the bulbs in the taillight assembly

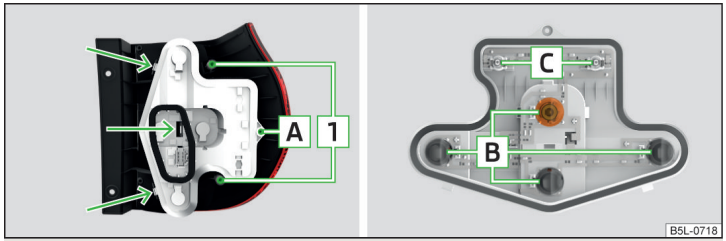


Fig. 205 **Inner part of the light: Ground light**

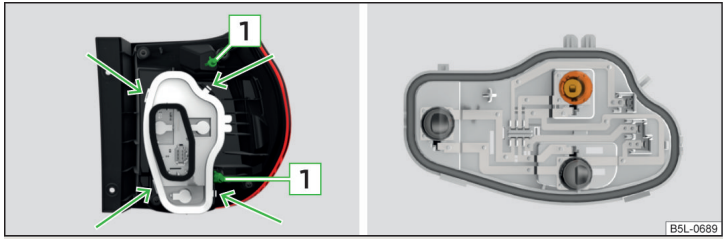


Fig. 206 **Inner part of the light: Light with LED diodes**

Read and observe ! and ! on page 172 first.

Ground light

› With the spanner from the vehicle tools unscrew the securing screw A » Fig. 205.
› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 205 marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective bulb B until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb B into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Pull bulb C out of the socket and insert a new bulb.
› Insert the lamp holder in the lamp and screw in the locking screw A » Fig. 205 .

Light with LED diodes

› Unlock the bulb holder using the locking latches in the areas » Fig. 206 marked with arrows and remove the bulb holder from the light.
› Turn the respective light bulb » Fig. 206 until it stops **counter-clockwise** and remove it from the bulb holder.
› Insert a new bulb into the holder and turn **in a clockwise direction** to the stop.
› Insert the lamp holder in the lamp until it is secure.

Technical data

Technical data

Basic vehicle data

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

Vehicle data 177
Operating weight 178
Payload 178
Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives 179
Dimensions 180
Angle and gradeability 181

The details given in the vehicle's technical documentation always take precedence over the details in the Owner's Manual.

The performance values listed were determined without performance-reducing equipment, e.g. air conditioning system.

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The values listed are for the basic model without optional equipment.

Vehicle data

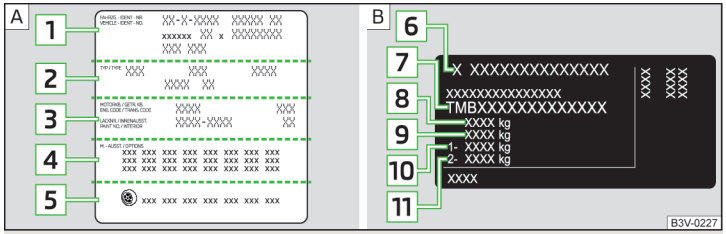


Fig. 207 **Vehicle data sticker/type plate**

Vehicle data sticker

The vehicle data sticker » Fig. 207 - A is located on the base of the luggage compartment and is also stuck into the Owner's Manual.

The vehicle data sticker contains the following data.

1 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
2 Vehicle type
3 Gearbox code/paint number/interior equipment/engine output/engine code
4 Partial vehicle description
5 Approved tyre diameter in inches[1)]

The approved tyres and rim sizes for your vehicle are listed in the vehicle's technical documentation (the so called COC document) and this also states the declaration of conformity.

Type plate

The type plate » Fig. 207 - B is located at the bottom of the B-pillar on the right driver's side.

The type plate contains the following data.

6 Vehicle manufacturers
7 Vehicle identification number (VIN)
8 Maximum permissible gross weight
9 Maximum permissible towed weight (towing vehicle and trailer)

[1)] Only valid for some countries.

10 Maximum permissible front axle load
11 Maximum permissible rear axle load

Vehicle identification number (VIN)
The vehicle identification number - VIN (vehicle body number) is stamped into the engine compartment on the right hand suspension strut dome. This number is also located on a sign on the lower left hand edge below the windscreen (together with a VIN bar code), and on the type plate.

Engine number
The engine number (three-digit identifier and serial number) is stamped on the engine block.

Supplementary Information (applies to Russia)
The full type approval number of the means of transport is indicated in the registration documents, field 17.

Maximum permissible trailer weight
The listed maximum permissible trailer weight is only valid for altitudes up to 1000 m above sea level.

The engine output falls as altitude increases, as does the vehicle's climbing power. Therefore, for every additional 1000 m in height (or part), the maximum permissible towed weight must be reduced by 10%.

The towed weight is made up of the actual weights of the loaded towing vehicle and the loaded trailer.

! WARNING
Do not exceed the specified maximum permissible weights – risk of accident and damage!

Operating weight

This value is only a guide value and corresponds to the lowest possible operating weight without further weight-reducing equipment (e.g. air conditioning, spare wheel etc.). It also includes a weight allowance for the driver (75 kg), the weight of the operating fluids, the tool kit and a fuel tank filled to 90 % capacity.

Operating weight

Engine	Transmission	Operating weight (kg)
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	1340
	DSG	1360
1.4 l./92 kW TSI	MG	1355
	DSG	1380
1.4 l./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	1471
	DSG 4x4	1496
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	1320
	AG	1345
1.8 l./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	1540
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4)	1420
	MG (EU6)	1452
	MG 4x4	1550
2.0 l./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	1535
	DSG 4x4	1560
2.0 l./110 kW TDI CR	MG	1486
	MG 4x4	1565
	DSG 4x4	1585

i Note
If required, you can find out the precise weight of your vehicle at a specialist garage.

Payload

It is possible to calculate the approximate maximum payload from the difference between the permissible total weight and the operating weight.

The payload consists of the following weights.
- The weight of the passengers.
- The weight of all items of luggage and other loads.
- The weight of the roof, including the roof rack system.
- The weight of the equipment that is excluded from the operating weight.
- The trailer drawbar load when towing a trailer (max. 80 kg or 85 kg for vehicles 4x4 with the 2.0 l / 103 kW TDI CR and 2.0 l / 110 kW TDI CR engine).

Measurement of fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions according to ECE Regulations and EU Directives

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions were not available at the time of going to press.

The data on fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are given on the ŠKODA websites or in the sales and technical vehicle documentation.

The measurement of the intra-urban cycle begins with a cold start of the engine. Afterwards urban driving is simulated.

In the extra-urban driving cycle, the vehicle is accelerated and decelerated in all gears, corresponding to daily routine driving conditions. The driving speed varies between 0 and 120 km/h.

The calculation of the combined fuel consumption considers a weighting of about 37 % for the intra-urban cycle and 63 % for the extra-urban cycle.

Note

- The emission and fuel consumption figures given on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation have been established in accordance with rules and under conditions that are set out by statutory or technical rules for the determination of operational and technical data of motor vehicles.
- Depending on the extent of the equipment, the driving style, traffic conditions, weather influences and vehicle condition, consumption values can in practice result in fuel economy figures in the use of the vehicle that differ from the fuel consumption values listed on the ŠKODA websites or in the commercial and technical vehicle documentation.

Dimensions

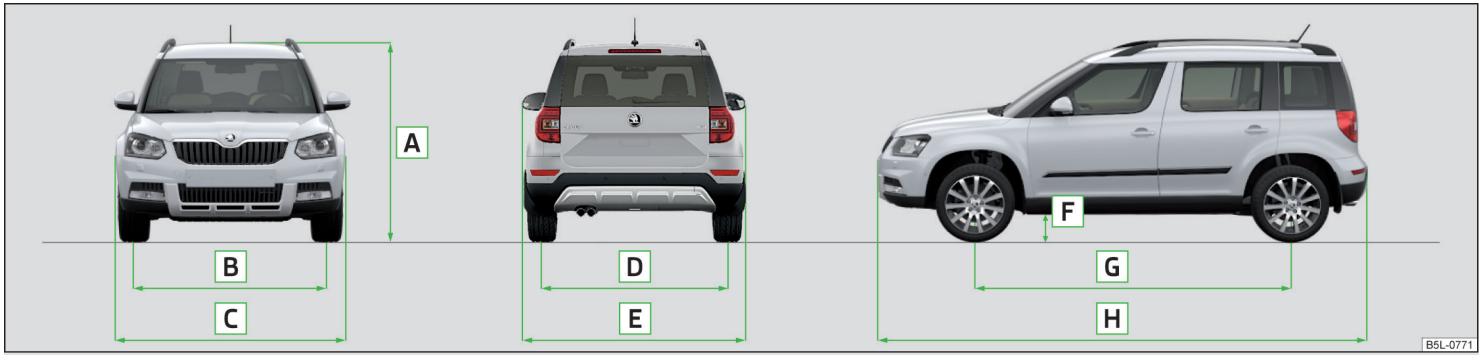


Fig. 208 **Vehicle dimensions**

Vehicle dimensions for operating weight without driver (in mm)

» Fig. 208	Specification	Yeti	Yeti Outdoor
A	Height	1691	
B	Front track	1541	
C	Width	1793	
D	Rear track	1537	
E	Width including exterior mirror	1956	
F	Clearance	180	
G	Wheel base	2578	
H	Length	4222	

Angle and gradeability

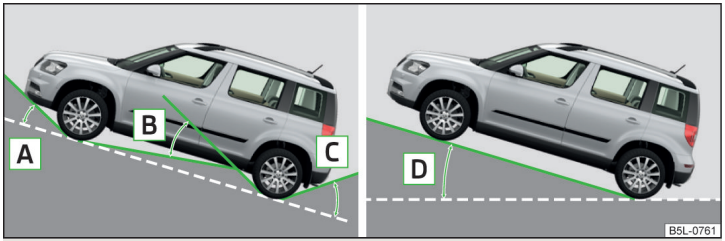


Fig. 209 **Overhang angle and ramp angle / slope angle**

Angle » Fig. 209

A Overhang angle, front

B Ramp angle

C Overhang angle, rear

D Pitch angle / climbing ability

The **departure angle values** indicate the maximum incline of a slope, up which the vehicle can drive at a slow speed without the bumper or underbody making contact with the slope. The values listed correspond to the maximum axle load, front or back.

The **ramp angle** indicates the value to which the vehicle can travel at a slow speed on a ramp without setting the underbody on the ramp edge.

The**Incline / gradeability** indicates the value to which the vehicle can drive up a slope on its own (Independent of the road surface and engine power). The height gained over a distance of 100 m (slope) is specified in percent or degrees.

Engine	Transmission	Front overhang angle (°)	Rear overhang angle (°)	Ramp angle (°)	Slope angle (°) / climbing ability (%)
1.2 ltr./81 kW TSI	MG	19 / 17.1[a)]	32/30[a)]	19.6 / 17.2[a)]	24/44
	DSG	19 / 17.1[a)]	32/30[a)]	19.6 / 17.2[a)]	25/47 (26/49)[a)]
1.4 l./92 kW TSI	MG	19	32	19.6	27/52
	DSG	19	32	19.6	29/55
1.4 l./110 kW TSI	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	30/57
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/61
1.6 l./81 kW MPI	MG	19	32	19.6	22/40
	AG	19	32	19.6	45/100
1.8 l./112 kW TSI	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	29/55
2.0 l./81 kW TDI CR	MG (EU4, EU5)	19	32	19.6	29/55
	MG (EU6)	19/18[a)]	32 / 25.5[a)]	19.6 / 18.2[a)]	29/55 (31/59)[a)]
	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	35/69
2.0 l./103 kW TDI CR	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/60
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	31/60

Engine	Transmission	Front overhang angle (°)	Rear overhang angle (°)	Ramp angle (°)	Slope angle (°) / climbing ability (%)
2.0 l./110 kW TDI CR	MG	19	32	19.6	41/86
	MG 4x4	19	32	19.6	39/80
	DSG 4x4	19	32	19.6	38/77

[a] Applies to vehicles with tyre size 205/55 R 16.

Vehicle-specific data depending on the engine

Introduction

This chapter contains information on the following subjects:

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine 183
1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine 183
1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine 184
1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine 184
1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI engine 184
2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine 185
2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine 185
2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine 185

The values given have been determined in accordance with regulations and in conditions prescribed by legal or technical provisions for determining the operating and technical data of vehicles.

The emissions standard is detailed in the technical vehicle documentation as well as in the certificate of conformity (COC document), which can be obtained from a ŠKODA partner[a].

[a] Only valid for some countries and some models.

1.2 ltr. / 81 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81 / 4600-5600	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	175 / 1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1197	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	179	178
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	10.9	11.4

1.4 l/92 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	92 / 5000-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	200 / 1400-4000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Transmission	**MG**	**DSG**
Top speed (km/h)	187	186
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10.1

1.4 l/110 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110 / 5000-6000	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250 / 1500-3500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1395	
Transmission	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	195	191
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	8.7	8.9

1.6 l/81 kW MPI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	81/5800	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	155/3800	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1598	
Transmission	**MG**	**AG**
Top speed (km/h)	175	172
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.8	13.3

1.8 ltr./112 kW TSI engine

Output (kW/rpm)	112 / 4300-6200
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	250 / 1500-4500
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1789
Transmission	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0

2.0 ltr./81 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	MG (EU4, EU5)	81/4200	
	MG (EU6), MG 4x4	81/3500	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	MG (EU4, EU5)	250 / 1500-2500	
	MG (EU6), MG 4x4	250 / 1750-3000	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Transmission	**MG (EU4, EU5)**	**MG (EU6)**	**MG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	177	179	175
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	11.6	11.7	12.2

2.0 ltr./103 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	103/4200	
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	320 / 1750-2500	
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968	
Transmission	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	190	187
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.9	10.2

2.0 ltr./110 kW TDI CR engine

Output (kW/rpm)	110/3500		
Maximum torque (Nm at 1/min)	340 / 1750-3000		
Number of cylinders/displacement (cm^3)	4/1968		
Transmission	**MG**	**MG 4x4**	**DSG 4x4**
Top speed (km/h)	199	195	192
Acceleration 0-100 km/h (s)	9.0	9.1	9.2

Index

A

ABS
Operation 112
Warning light 36
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 135
Accessories 133
Adaptive headlight
see xenon headlight 62
AdBlue 143
Check level 143
indicator light 32
refill 144
Adjusting
Steering wheel 12
Adjusting seats manually 70
Adjusting the seats 11
Advice on tyre/wheel usage 152
AFS
Display messages 36
Warning light 36
AHL
see xenon headlight 62
Air-conditioning system
Air outlet vents 98
Airbag 17
Adjustments and impairments to the airbag system 134
Deactivation 20
Deployment 18
Warning light 38
Airbag system 17
Air conditioning 95
Air distribution control 97
Climatronic 96
Manual air conditioning 95
Air distribution control 97
Air outlet vents 98
Alarm 53
Trailer 132
All-year tyres 154
Alternator
Warning light 34
Anti-lock braking system (ABS) 112
Anti-theft alarm system 53
Trailer 132
Anti-theft wheel bolts 159
Armrest
Front 73
Ashtray 80
Assist systems 112
Auto Check Control 32
Automatic drive
Selector lever 108
Automatic driving light control 62
Automatic gearbox
Kickdown 110
Selector lever-emergency unlocking 168
Selector lever lock 109
Starting-off and driving 110
Tiptronic 109
Automatic shutdown of consumers 149
Automatic transmission 108
Selector lever lock 109
AUX 79
Auxiliary heating (auxiliary heating and ventilation) 98
Avoiding damage to your vehicle 111

B

Bar with sliding hook 89
Battery
Changing batteries for the removable light 166
Changing in key 166
Replace the battery in the remote control in the auxiliary heating 166
Belts 14
Belt tensioners 16
Bluetooth
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Bonnet
Closing 145
Opening 145
Boot
Class N1 vehicles 93
See boot lid 55
Boot lid
Automatic locking 55
Open/Close 55
Warning light 34
Brake Assist (HBA) 113
Brake booster 105
Brake fluid 149
Check 149
specification 149
Brake pads
New 105
Brake pedal (automatic transmission)
Warning light 39
Brakes
Brake booster 105
Brake fluid 149
Braking and stabilisation systems 112
Handbrake 106
Information on braking 105
Warning lights 34
Brake system 112
Breakdown kit 161
Breakdown service
see Help in an emergency 9
Bulbs
Replacing 172
Buttons in the door
Electric window 56

C

Camera
See reversing camera 118
Car battery
Check condition 150
Cover 150
Disconnecting and reconnecting 151
Replacing 151
Winter operation 150
Car care
Exterior 138
Interior 140
Car computer
See multifunction display 43
Care and maintenance 133
Carrier 94
Car washing 137
Exterior 138
Interior 140
Washing 137
Central locking 49
Problems 53
Central locking button 51
Changing
Batteries for the removable light 166
Battery 166
Windscreen wiper blades 169
Changing a wheel 157
Changing 157
Changing gear
Selector lever 108
Changing wheels
Wheels 157
Charging a vehicle battery 151
Check
Brake fluid 149
Engine oil 147
Fasten ball rod properly 128
Oil level 147
Checking
Battery status 150
Coolant 148
Checks
Statutory checks 133
Children and safety 22
Child safety lock 53
Child seat 22
Classification 24
Installation location 24, 25
ISOFIX 25
on the front passenger seat 23, 24
TOP TETHER 26
Cigarette lighter 80
Climatronic
air distribution control 97
Automatic operation 97
Operating elements 96
Clothes hook 84
Cockpit 29
Lighting 64
Comfort control
window 57
Comfort signalling 61
COMING HOME 63
Compartments 77
Component protection 134
Computer
See multifunction display 43
Convenience operation
sliding / tilting roof 59
Coolant 148
Checking 148
Refilling 148
Temperature display 31
Warning light 34
Cornering lights
Display messages 36
Correct routing of seat belt 15
Correct seated position 11
Correct seating position 13
Cruise control system
Warning light 39
Cruise Control System 123
Cup holders 79

D

DAY LIGHT
see Daylight running lights 61
Daylight running lights 61
Deactivation
Airbag 20
Delayed locking of the boot lid
See boot lid 55
Departure angle 181
Diesel 142
Diesel fuel 142
Diesel particle filter (DPF) 37
Digital Clock 41
Digital Service Plan 137
Dipped beam 60
Dipstick 147
Display
Cardinal points 40
Coolant temperature 31
Fuel level 31
Gear changes 41
In the instrument cluster 40
Service intervals 46
Display MAXI DOT 44
Display of the second speed 41
Display of the second speedometer 41
Disposal
Acceptance and recycling of used vehicles 135

Door
Child safety lock 53
Emergency locking 167
Emergency locking of the driver's door 167
Opening/Closing 52
warning light door open 34
Door alarm 40
Door open
warning light 34
Drive
Driving through water 111
Driver Steering Recommendation (DSR) 113
Driving
Emissions 179
Fuel consumption 179
through water 111
Top speed 183
DSR 113

E

Economical driving 110
EDL 113
Electrical power windows 57
Button in the rear doors 56
Electric power windows 55
Electric window
Buttons in the driver´s door 56
Electric windows
Operational faults 57
Electronic Differential Lock (EDL) 113
Electronic immobiliser 102
Emergency
Hazard warning light system 63
Jump-starting 163
Selector lever-unlocking 168
Starting / stopping the engine with the push of a button 103
Starting the engine / stopping with the push of a button 104
Towing the vehicle 164
Towing the vehicle using the trailer device 165
Tyre repair 161
Unlocking/locking the door 167
Unlocking / locking the door 167
Emergency equipment
Fire extinguisher 156
First aid kit 156
Jack 157
Reflective vest 156
Vehicle tool kit 157
Warning triangle 156
Emission control system 37
Emissions 179
Engine
Running in 110
Engine compartment 144
Brake fluid 149
Coolant 148
Engine oil 146
Overview 146
Vehicle battery 149
Windscreen washer fluid 146
Engine drag torque control (MSR) 112
Engine number 177
engine oil
specification 147
Engine oil 146
Check 147
Oil changing 146
Refilling 147
warning light 35
EPC 37
ESC
Operation 112
Warning light 36
Extended warranty 6
Exterior temperature 43

F

Fastening elements 88
Fatigue detection 124
Films 138
Fire extinguisher 156
First aid kit 156
Flashing 61
Flexible storage compartment 89
Floor covering in the luggage compartment 90
Fog lights
Warning light 39
Fog lights/rear fog light 62
Fog lights with the CORNER function 63
folding table
on the rear seat backrest 85
Folding table
on the front seat backrest 85
Footmats 108
see footmats 108
Force limiter
Sliding/tilting roof 58
Window 57
Front seats 70
Fuel 141
Diesel 142
Fuel gauge 31
refer to Fuel 141
Refuelling 141
Unleaded petrol 142
Warning light 38
Fuel consumption 179
Fuel filter
information messages 32
Fuel reserve 38
Fuses 169
in the dashboard 170
in the engine compartment 171

G

Gear change
Gear recommendation 41
Information on the selected gear 41
Gear changing
Gear stick 107
Genuine parts 134
Glasses compartment 83
GPS
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
gradeability 181

H

Handbrake 106
indicator light 34
Hazard warning light system 63
HBA 113
Headrests 75
Heating 95
Air distribution control 97
Controls 95
Mirrors 69
Seats 76
Windscreen and rear window 65
Help in an emergency 9
HHC 113
High beam
Warning light 39
Hill Start Assist (HHC) 113
Hitch 126
Horn 29

I

Ignition lock 103
Images
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Immobiliser 102
In an emergency
Changing a wheel 157
incline 181
Inertia reel 16
Information about the towing process 164
Information system 40
Door alarm 40
Gear recommendation 41
MAXI DOT display 44
Multifunction display 43
Service interval display 46
Infotainment 7
Instrument cluster 30
Auto Check Control 32
Display of the second speedometer 41
see instrument cluster 30
Warning lights 33
instrument lighting 31
interior light 64
Interior lighting 65
Interior monitor 54
iPad holder 86
ISOFIX 25

J

Jack 157
- fit 160
Jump-starting 163

K

KESSY
Unlocking/locking 51
key
Switch on/off ignition 103
Key
Changing battery 166
Lock 50
Starting / stopping the engine 103
Unlock 50

L

Lamp failure
Warning light 36
Lamps
Warning light 36
LEAVING HOME 63
lever
Turn signal/main beam 61
Lever
Cruise control 124
Operation of the information system 42
Windscreen wipers 67
light
Flash 61
instruments 31
Light
Automatic driving light control 62
COMING HOME / LEAVING HOME 63
Driving abroad 64
Fog lights/rear fog light 62
Fog lights with the CORNER function 63
Headlight cleaning system 68
Replacing bulbs 172
Turn signal/main beam 61
Xenon headlight 62
lighting
Luggage Storage 92
Lighting
Interior lighting 64
Lights 60
Cockpit 64
Daylight running 61
Dipped beam 60
Hazard warning light system 63
Headlight range control 60
Parking lights 60, 63
Switching on and off 60
Warning lights 33
Load 178

Lock
Individual settings 52
Key 50
Locking
Central locking button 51
in case of emergency 167
KESSY 51
Remote control 50
Lock steering lock 102
Low tyre pressure warning
refer to the tyre pressure monitoring 125
Luggage compartment
Cover 90
Fastening elements 88
Fastening with sliding hook 89
Fixing nets 88
Flexible storage compartment 89
Floor covering on both sides 90
Net partition 91
Side compartments 91
unlock manually 167
Unlock the boot lid 167
Variable loading floor 93
Luggage compartment cover 90
Luggage compartment lid 54
Luggage Storage 87
lighting 92
removable lamp 92

M

Main beam 61
Manual air conditioning
Air distribution control 97
Controls 95
Manual gear changing
see gear changing 107
Materials defect liability 5
MAXI DOT
See MAXI DOT display 44
MAXI DOT display
Main menu 44
Menu item assist systems 45
Menu item Audio 45
Menu item navigation 44
Menu item phone 45
Operation 42
Settings 45
Mechanical window
Open and close 56
Media
AUX 79
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
USB 79
Memory 44
Memory Function for the seat 71
MFD
See multifunction display 43
Mirror 68
Vanity 66
mobility warranty 6
Modes of the automatic transmission 108
Modifications and technical alterations 133
MSR 112
Multifunction display
Functions 43
Information 43
Memory 44
Multifunction pocket 89
Multifunction steering wheel 42
Multimedia holder 82

N

N1 93
Nameplate 177
Navigation
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Net partition 91
Nets 88

O

OFF ROAD 114
ABS 115
EDS 115
hill descent assistant 115
operation 114
Start-Off Assistant 116
TCS 115
OFF ROAD mode
warning light 39
OFF ROAD Mode 114
oil
information messages 35
See engine oil 147
Oil changing
Engine oil 146
oil pressure
information messages 35
On-board computer
See multifunction display 43
Operating weight 178
Original accessories 134
Overview
Cockpit 29
Engine compartment 146
Fuses 169
Warning lights 33

P

Park assist
Departing from a parallel parking space 122
Parking 122
Park Assist 120
Automatic brake assist 123
Malfunctions 123
Operation 120
Parking space search 121

Parking 107
Park Assist 120
Parking aid 116
Reversing camera 118
Parking aid 116
Function 116
Parking assistance
Activation / deactivation 118
Display in the Infotainment display 117
Parking lights 60
Parking the vehicle
See Parking 107
ParkPilot 116
Parts replacement 133
Passive safety
Before setting off 11
Driving safety 11
Passive Safety 11
Pedals 108
Footmats 108
Petrol 142
Phone
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Pocket in the luggage compartment 89
Pockets 84
Power limit
Tilt / slide sunroof 58
Power steering 35
Power windows
Button in the front passenger door 56
Practical equipment
storage net in the front centre console 83
Practical features
Pockets 84
Storage compartment under the front passenger seat 84
Waste container 81
Preheating unit 37

R

Radio
See Owner's Manual Infotainment/Radio 7
Raising the vehicle 160
Rear fog light 62
Warning light 36
Rear seats 73
Rear view camera
Function keys 119
Orientation lines 119
Rear View Camera
Operation 119
Rear view mirror 68
Rear window - heating 65
refilling
AdBlue 144
Refilling
Coolant 148
Engine oil 147
Windscreen washer fluid 146
Reflective vest 156
Refuelling 141
Fuel 141
Regulation
Headlight beam 60
Remote
Synchronization process 53
Remote control
Aux. heating (aux. heating and ventilation) 100
Changing battery 166
Unlocking/locking the vehicle 50
Removable lamp 92
Removable light
Changing batteries 166
Removable through-loading bag 85
Repairs and technical alterations 133
Replace
Battery 166
Replacing
Bulbs 172
Fuses 169
Windscreen wiper blades 168
Rev counter 30
Reversing camera 118
Rims 152
Roof
Load 94
Roof rack 94
Running in
Brake pads 105
Engine 110
Tyres 152

S

SafeLock 52
Safety 11
Airbag 17
Child safety 22
Child safety seats 22
Correct seated position 11
Headrests 75
ISOFIX 25
TOP TETHER 26
Safety belts
rear middle seat 16
SAFE, SAFELOCK
See SafeLock 52
Saving electrical energy 110
Saving fuel 110
SD-Card
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Seat belt
height adjustment 15
Seat belts 14
Belt tensioners 16
fastening and unfastening 15

Seatbelts
Inertia reels 16
Seat belts
Warning light 34
Seat electrical adjustment 71
Seats
Electrical adjustment 71
Folding front passenger seat 72
front 70
Front armrest 73
Headrests 75
Heating 76
Manually adjusting 70
Memory Function of the electrically adjustable seat 71
Rear 73
Setting 70
Storing in memory of remote control key 72
Seats and head restraint 70
Selector lever 108
Selector lever control 108
Selector lever lock
Warning light 39
Service 133
Service interval display 46
Service intervals 135, 136
Service Plan 137
Setting
Aux. heating (aux. heating and ventilation) 99
Headrests 75
Mirror 68, 69
Seat belt height 15
Seats 70
Setting the
Clock 41
Shifting
Tiptronic 109
Sliding/tilting roof
Activating operation of the sunshade 59
Sunshade 59
SmartGate
Connection via Wi-Fi 48
introductory information 47
Password/PIN code change 49
Setting 49
Wi-Fi direct connection 48
SmartLink
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
SMS
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Snow chains 155
Sockets
12-volt socket in the interior 81
12-volt socket in the luggage compartment 81
Sound
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Spare wheel 154
Removing / stowing 158
Speed symbol 154
Spoiler 134
Stabilisation system 112
Stability Control (ESC) 112
START-STOP 104
Jump-starting 163
Manually deactivating/activating the system 105
operation 104
START-STOP system 104
Start engine
immobiliser 102
Starter button
Lock / unlock the steering lock 102
Problems with the engine start 104
Starting / stopping the engine 103
Switch on/off ignition 103
Starting engine
Jump-starting 163
Starting the engine
Jump-starting 163
Key 103
Starter button 103
Steering lock (KESSY system)
warning light 35
Steering wheel
Buttons 42
Correct posture 12
setting 12
Stopping
See Parking 107
Stopping the engine
Key 103
Starter button 103
Storage 77
compartment under the front passenger seat 84
Storage box 92
Storage compartment
Glasses compartment 83
in the front centre console 78
in the rear centre console 84
on the dash panel 78
on the front passenger side 83
under the front arm rest 82
Storage compartments 77
storage net in the front centre console 83
Storing
seats 71
Stowage
compartments in the doors 78
Sunshade of the sliding/tilting roof 59
Sun visors 66
Switch
Car battery 151
Switching the lights on and off 60
Switch off
Alarm 54
Switch off ignition 103
Key 103
Switch off TCS
Warning light 36

Switch on ignition 103
Key 103

T

Table
on the front seat backrest 85
on the middle rear seat backrest 85
Tablet holder 86
TCS
Deactivate/activate 113
Function 113
Warning light 36
Technical data 177
Through-loading bag 85
Ticket holder 77
Tilt / slide sunroof
Activate operation 59
Operation 58
Time 41
Tiptronic 109
Tools 157
Top speed 183
TOP TETHER 26
Towing 165
Towing a trailer 131
Towing away 164
Towing device 130
Accessories 129
Description 126
Vertical load 126
Towing eye 165
Towing protection 54
Towing the vehicle 164
Traction control (TCS) 36, 113
Trailer
Connect and disconnect 130
Load 131
loading 130
Towing a trailer 131
Trailer stabilization system (TSA) 114
Trailer towing 126
Transmission
Warning messages 32
transport
Luggage Storage 87
Transport
Roof rack 94
Towing device and trailer 126
Transporting children 22
Triangle 156
TSA 114
Turn signal 61
Turn signal system
Warning light 39
Tyre load capacity 154
Tyre pressure 152
Warning light 38
Tyre pressure monitoring 125
Warning light 38
Tyre repair 161
Tyres 152
damage 152
Explanation of the label 154
new 152
Tyre pressure 152
Wear indicator 153
Tyre size 154

U

Unlock
Individual settings 52
Key 50
Unlocking
Central locking button 51
In case of emergency 167
KESSY 51
Remote control 50
Unlocking and locking 49
Unlock steering lock 102
USB 79
Used vehicles
Acceptance and recycling 135
Useful equipment
Clothes hook 84
Cup holders 79
Glasses compartment 83
Multimedia holder 82
Removable through-loading bag 85
Useful features
12-volt socket in the interior 81
12-volt socket in the luggage compartment 81
Ashtray 80
Cigarette lighter 80
Reflective vest 156
Storage compartment 77
Ticket holder 77
Using the variable loading floor with a spare wheel 94

V

Variable loading floor 93
Variable loading floor with spare wheel
Removable storage box 92
Vehicle battery
Automatic shutdown of consumers 149
charging 151
Safety instructions 149
Vehicle care 137
Vehicle cleaning 137
Vehicle condition
See Auto-Check Control 32
Vehicle data sticker 177
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate
Vehicle data sticker and nameplate 177
Vehicle dimensions 180
Vehicle height 180
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 177

Vehicle length 180
Vehicle tool kit 157
Vehicle width 180
Vest 156
VIN
Vehicle Identification Number 177
Visibility 65
Visors 66
Voice Operation
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7

W

Warning lights 33
MAXI DOT display 32
Warning of a low temperature 39
Warning symbols
MAXI DOT display 32
see Warning lights 33
Warning triangle 156
warning when speeding 43
Warranty 5
Waste container 81
Water in the fuel filter 32
Weather conditions 133
Weights 177, 178
Wheel bolts
Anti-theft wheel bolts 159
Caps 159
Loosening and tightening 160
Wheels 152
Full trim 158
Load Index 154
Snow chains 155
Speed symbol 154
Tyre age 152
Tyre damage 152
Tyre pressure 152
Tyre storage 152
unidirectional tyres 152
Winter tyres 154
Wi-Fi 48
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7
Wi-Fi direct 48
Window
operation 55
Window operation 55
Windscreen - heating 65
Windscreen and rear window heating 65
Windscreen washer fluid
Refilling 146
Warning light 39
Windscreen washer system 66
Windscreen wipers and washers 66
Activation 67
Add fluid 146
Automatic rear window wiper 67
Operation 67
Replacing the windscreen wiper blade 169
Replacing the windscreen wiper blades 168
Service position of the windscreen wiper arms 168
Winter operation 154
All-year tyres 154
Car battery 150
Diesel fuel 142
Snow chains 155
Winter tyres 154
Winter tyres 154
Wipers and washer
Warning light for windscreen washer fluid level 39
Wiping interval 67
WLAN
See Owner's Manual Infotainment 7

X

Xenon headlight 62
Xenon headlights
Warning light 36

Reprinting, duplicating, translating and any other use, either in whole or in part, is not permitted without the written consent of ŠKODA AUTO a.s..

ŠKODA AUTO a.s. expressly reserves all rights relating to copyright laws.

Subject to change.

Issued by: ŠKODA AUTO a.s.

© ŠKODA AUTO a.s. 2016

ŠKODA Service App – ŠKODA service in your pocket

The application ŠKODA service is provided for Smartphones with Android or iPhone systems. This task is mainly to help you as a customer of ŠKODA AUTO in difficult situations when on the road.

My Dealer – select your preferred dealer and read about their current offer or ŠKODA news.

Assistance – Contact a breakdown recovery service, find the nearest dealer when on the road and use the service Parking Helper.

My car – the complete operating instructions and a summary list of all the warning lights for a quick overview, a guide for media systems and Quick Tips.



Ready for download in the AppStore for iOS and Google Play for Android.

ŠKODA Manual App – get to know your vehicle

The application ŠKODA Manual is designed for tablet users with the systems Android and iOS, who have an interest in getting to know the ŠKODA vehicle brand or already have one. The application contains the complete version of the electronic manual for all current models of the ŠKODA brand. Furthermore, it contains a list of all warning lights, a guide for media systems as well as a picture diagram of the Quick Tips.

Some of the main functions of the application include:

› Easy content navigation
› Easy content reading
› Full text search through the entire manual
› Tab for quick access to favourite chapter



Available on the App Store

GET IT ON Google play

www.skoda-auto.com

Návod k obsluze
Yeti anglicky 05.2016
S90.5610.26.20
5L0012720AL

